An experimental study of the biology of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934 (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea).

Thesis submitted in accordance with the requirements of the University of Liverpool for the degree of Doctor in Philosophy.

by

David William Pool Department of Zoology, University of Liverpool. August, 1985.



Bothriocephalus acheilognathi in a Cyprinus carpio intestine. Marker = 100um.

p	а	g	e
-		0	-

Abstract	i
Acknowled	l gements iii
General Intro	duction1
Geogra	phical distribution2
The life	cycle of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> 4
I.	The egg4
II.	Hatching of the egg5
III	. Coracidium
IV.	Procercoid7
۷.	Plerocercoid9
VI.	Adult
Refere	nces12

PART	I.	The	Taxo	nomi c	status	of	the	Botl	nriocephalu	<u>15</u> Sj	peci	les
para	sit	isir	ng d	e ypri i	nid fi	she	8				2	3
	Intro	ducti	Lon	* * * * * * *		• • • •			* * * * * * * * * * * *		••21	ŧ
	Refe	rend	es			••••	• • • • • •	• • • • •	* * * * * * * * * * * * * *	• • • • •	27	7.
Chapt	ter 1	i. A	cri	itical	scanni	ng	elect	tron	microscope	stu	ıdy	of

Bothriocephalus acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934, with a review of the taxanomic history of the genus Bothriocephalus parasitising cyprinid

?ishes
Introduction
Materials and methods
Results
Discussion
Conclusions

References45

Chapter 2. The taxonomic status of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> aegyptiacus

Rysa vy	and	Moravec,	1 97 5	and	<u>B.</u>	kivuensis	Baer	and
Fain,	195	8	• • • • • • •	* • * • • •	* * * * *	• • • • • • • • • • • • •		••••50
Int	roduct	ion			• • • •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	••••••	••••51
Met	hod .		• • • • • •				• • • • • • •	••••53
Res	sults	anddisc	ussio	n		* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	******	•••• 54
Con	clusio	ns				•••••	• • • • • • •	••••58
Ref	erences	3						59

PART II. An Experimental Study of some aspects of the Biology of
Bothriocephalus acheilognathi
Introduction
References
Chapter 3. An experimental study of the population dynamics of
Bothriocephalus acheilognathi
Introduction
1. The fecundity of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> .
methods69
results
2. The effect of temperature on the
hatching of eggs of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> .
methods73
results
3. Effect of temperature and age of the
coracidium on coracidium survival and
infectivity.
methods

results
4. Effect of age of coracidium when consumed
on the subsequent development of the
procercoid.
methods
results
5. The effect of temperature and age of the
procercoid on establishment within a
<u>Cyprinus carpio</u> definitive host.
methods
results
6. The relationship between the density of
the procercoids and establishment in a
<u>Cyprinus carpio</u> definitive host.
methods
results
7. The effect of temperature on the
development of the plerocercoid and adult
stages.
methods
results
8. The influence of size of Cyprinus carpio
on establishment of <u>Bothriocephalus</u>
acheilognathi.
methods104
results
Discussion108
Conclusions115
References116

Introduction158
Materials and methods159
Results161
Discussion163
References

Appendix. Publications.

Acknowledgements.

I would like to thank Dr J. C. Chubb for supervising this research, and for much help and advice; Dr R. G. Pearson, in whose department the work was carried out; and the National Environment Research Council for the provision of a grant.

I am very grateful to the many people who assisted me during my research. In particular I would like to thank Dr A. F. Brown (advice and critical reading of manuscripts); Dr C. Andrews (assistance during praziquantel work and access to unpublished data); Mr K. Veltkamp (scanning electron microscopy); Mr J. Smith (transmission electron microscopy); Mr B. Lewis (photography); Professor A. J. Cain (advice and critical reading of taxonomic work); Mr J. Gittins (fieldwork); Mr D. Ainsworth (technical assistance); Mr. M. Armitage (assistance with computing); Dr. R. Sweeting, Dr P. Andrews and Bayer AG (provision of praziquantel); Mr K. Ryder (assistance during praziquantel work); Dr K. Wilson (provision of infected carp); Professor O. M. Amin, Dr A. Fain, Dr G. L. Hoffman, Professor W. Korting, Dr F. Moravec, The Museum of Natural History of Geneva, The Musee Royal de l'Afrique Centrale and The British Museum for Natural History (provision of Bothriocephalus specimens); and Miss A. Callaghan and Miss S. Scott for typing the thesis.

Finally I would like to express my gratitude to Jackie and my parents for their help throughout this study.

iii

Abstract.

<u>Bothriocephalus</u> specimens from a single 0+ <u>Ctenopharyngodon</u> <u>idella</u> were fixed using three different techniques, and the scolex morphology was examined using scanning electron microscopy. The scolices were compared with the five species of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> and one species of <u>Schyzocotyle</u> previousley recorded from cyprinid fishes. The taxonomic history of the <u>Bothriocephalus</u> species parasitising cyprinid fishes was reviewed. It was concluded that the six species were synonymous, and that priority should be given to the name <u>B. acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934; with <u>B.</u> <u>opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti, 1934, <u>B. fluviatilis</u> Yamaguti, 1952, <u>B.</u> <u>gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955, <u>B. phoxini</u> Molnár, 1968 and <u>Schyzocotyle</u> <u>fluviatilis</u> as synonyms.

A critical examination of the three species of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> reported from cyprinid fishes in Africa is presented. The characters examined did not enable the species to be differentiated, therefore it is suggested that <u>B. aegyptiacus</u> Ryšavý and Moravec, 1975 and <u>B. kivuensis</u> Baer and Fain, 1958 are synonyms of <u>B.</u> acheilognathi.

Laboratory experiments revealed that establishment, development and mortality of each stage of the life cycle of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> was temperature dependant. In addition the infectivity of the coracidium and procercoid was age dependant. Development of the procercoid was influenced by the age of the coracidium when ingested by the copepod intermediate host, and the infectivity of the procercoid was inversely related to the density of the procercoids within the intermediate host.

Estimation of the time taken for the completion of the life

i

cycle at temperatures ranging from 18-30 °C showed it to be inversely related to temperature. The size of the <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> host influenced the ability of the plerocercoids to establish, with no establishment occuring in <u>C. carpio</u> greater than 63 mm fork length.

The strobila of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> was observed to undergo a cyclical pattern of contraction and relaxation within the host intestine. The frequency of this behaviour was associated with the feeding behaviour of the <u>C. carpio</u> host. No significant variation in scolex position was observed. Egg release by <u>B. acheilognathi</u> also followed a cyclical pattern, with peak egg production occurring shortly after the entry of food into the intestine.

Praziquantel (<u>Droncit</u>, Bayer) was found to be a suitable anthelmintic for the control of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. <u>In vitro</u> studies indicated that praziquantel concentrations of 0.1ug per ml 0.9% saline and above, caused muscular contraction and severe tegumental damage. Exposure to drug concentrations of 100 ug praziquantel per ml saline for 24 hours was not lethal to the worms. Praziquantel had no ovicidal activity.

Praziquantel was used to eliminate <u>B. acheilognathi</u> from a batch of 30,000 newly imported <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u>. Dose rates of 105 and 125 mg praziquantel kg bodyweight⁻¹ administered as a medicated feed over a three day period were used. The fish were raised to 24°C in an indoor recirculating unit prior to treatment. The ponds containing infected fish were drained and limed to kill <u>B.</u> acheilognathi ova and copepods.

ii

General Introduction.

The rapid increase in angling, aquaculture and ornamental fish keeping in recent years has resulted in considerable interest being focussed upon the diseases and parasites of fishes. Much of this research has centred around the ecology and pathology of these parasites, with a view to establishing which species are potentially pathogenic, so that effective control measures can be developed and the introduction of these species into new habitats prevented.

Fish parasites or disease organisms may affect their hosts in a number of ways, causing alterations to their behaviour and blood chemistry, histopathological effects, reduced rates of growth and fecundity, and death (Bauer <u>et al</u>., 1969; Dogiel <u>et al</u>., 1958; Reichenbach-Klinke and Elkan, 1965; Andrews, 1985). Relatively few of the large number of fish diseases and parasites which have been described, are reported to be seriously pathogenic to their fish hosts (see reviews by Meyer, 1966; Roberts, 1978; Sarig, 1971, for examples). One such parasite is the pseudophyllidean cestode <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934, a parasite of fishes of the family Cyprinidae.

<u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> is a particular threat to underyearling cyprinids under culture conditions, where up to 100% of the fish can be infected , with as many as 467 worms per fish (eg Liao and Shih, 1956; Korting, 1974). At infestation levels of over 15 worms per fish pathological effects become apparent resulting, in extreme cases, in death (Par, 1978).

Geographical distribution.

Bothriocephalus acheilognathi was first described by Yamaguti in 1934 from the cyprinid fish <u>Acheilognathus rhombea</u> Temmink and Schlegal, from Lake Ogura, Japan. It is endemic to China, Japan and the River Amur. As a result of the exportation of <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> L. for food and sport, and <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> Val. for weed control, <u>B. acheilognathi</u> spread rapidly to Austria (Otte <u>et al</u>., 1972), Bulgaria (Petkov, 1972), Ceylon (Fernando and Furtardo, 1963), Czechoslovakia (Par and Parova, 1976), Hungary (Molnár, 1968), New Zealand (Edwards and Hine, 1974), Poland (Panczyk and Zelazny, 1974), Rumania (Radulescu and Georgescu, 1962), Ukraine (Malevitskaya, 1958)U.S.A. (Hoffman, 1976), U.S.S.R. (Bauer and Hoffman, 1976), West Germany (Körting, 1974) and Yugoslavia (Kezeik <u>et al</u>., 1975) (see Fig. 1).

In the late 1960's and early 1970's <u>B. acheilognathi</u> was introduced into the British Isles in a small number of <u>C.</u> <u>idella</u>, imported for experimental work by the Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food (Stott, 1977). Since that time <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> has been imported on a number of occasions (eg Andrews <u>et al.</u>, 1981; Pool <u>et al.</u>, 1984). In each instance a restriction on the movement of the infected fish, imposed by the relevant Water Authority under section 30 of the 1975 Salmon and Freshwater Fisheries Act, and/or the administration of suitable anthelmintics, has prevented the parasite becoming established in the British Isles.

It is not clear whether <u>B. acheilognathi</u> can persist in natural conditions in the British Isles. In at least one incident where infected <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> were released into a natural water, and anthelmintic treatment was not feasible, the parasite population



became extinct over a period of two years. Whereas in other incidents, mainly in the south of England, large numbers of <u>C</u>. <u>carpio</u>fry raised in the British Isles have become infected with <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u>, probably through contact with previously infected fishes.

The research presented in this thesis falls conveniently into three parts. In part I the taxonomic position of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> was examined in relation to the <u>Bothriocephalus</u> species described from Europe, U.S.S.R., and South East Asia (Chapter 1), and the species described from Africa (Chapter 2).

Part II describes the experimental work. One of the aims of this study was to establish if <u>B. acheilognathi</u> could survive and successfully complete it s' life cycle in the British Isles. The data collected is presented and discussed in chapter 3. While collecting <u>B. acheilognathi</u> for this study it was noted that the position occupied within the intestine varied depending on the period of time between feeding the fish host and dissection. In chapter 4 this was examined in greater detail in order to find the cause of this behaviour.

A large number of anthelmintics have been used to control <u>B. acheilognathi</u>, although few are completely successful at eliminating the parasite. In part III, <u>in vitro</u> experiments (Chapter 5) and large scale field trials (Chapter 6) are described using praziquantel (<u>Droncit</u>, Bayer).

The life cycle of Bothriocephalus acheilognathi.

The developmental cycle of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> is typical of most of the Bothriocephalidae, and is shown diagramatically in Fig. 2. It was first described by Yeh (1955) who noted that unidentified copepods acted as an intermediate host. In the following year Liao and Shih (1956) published an extensive study on the life cycle and biology. Since that time a number of studies have concentrated on all or certain aspects of the life cycle (eg Hoffman, 1976; Korting, 1975; Mitchell and Hoffman, 1980; Nakajima and Egusa, 1976; Pimenova, 1971, 1973; Urazbaev and Allaniyazova, 1977).

More extensive and detailed studies have been made on closely related pseudopyllidean cestodes: eg Clarke (1954) (<u>Schistocephalus solidus</u>); Dubinina (1966) (Ligulidae) and Kuperman (1973) (<u>Triaenophorus</u> species). Much of this work can be related to the development of B. acheilognathi.

I. The Egg.

The operculate eggs of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (Fig. 3a and b) are released from the mature proglottides of the adult worm, through the ventrally placed uterine pore (Fig. 12) into the host intestine. They pass into the water during evacuation of the host faeces and sink to the bottom.

The embryonic development of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> within the egg has been briefly described by Liao and Shih (1956) and Körting (1975). A more detailed description has been provided for other pseudophyllidean cestodes, eg <u>Dibothriocephalus</u> <u>latus</u> (= <u>Diphyllobothrium</u> <u>latum</u>) (Wardle and McLeod, 1952), <u>Triaenophorus</u>



Figure 2: The life cycle of Bothriocephalus acheilognathi.







b

Figure 3: The operculate egg of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. a. Unhatched. Marker = $10 \mu m$. b. Hatched. Marker = $5.6 \mu m$. <u>nodulosus</u> (Kuperman, 1973) and Ligulidae (Dubinina, 1966). It is probable that embryonic development is similar in all Pseudophyllidea (Schauinsland, 1885, cited Wardle and McLeod, 1952).

II. Hatching of the egg.

As the onc osphere develops within the egg it begins to move. Shortly before hatching these movements are quite vigorous and appear to cause the operculum to open, allowing the coracidium to emerge (Fig. 4). In the opinion of Vogel (1929) these movements together with an increased pressure within the egg caused the operculum of <u>Diphyllobothrium latum</u> eggs to open.

As the eggs of the pseudophyllidean cestodes and the digenean trematodes are very similar (Smyth and Clegg, 1959) the hatching process might be expected to be similar. In <u>Fasciola hepatica</u> the miracidium releases an enzyme which digests the substance binding the operculum to the shell. (Rowan, 1956). Production of this enzyme was stimulated by light. A number of authors have noted that light is required for the hatching of certain members of the Pseudo phyllidea: eg <u>D. latum</u> (Guttowa, 1961; Grabiec <u>et al</u>., 1963) and <u>D. norvegicum</u> (Vik, 1957) (= <u>D. dendriticum</u>). Dubinina (1966) reported that all members of the Pseudophyllidea the egg to hatch. However experiments performed with <u>B. acheilognathi</u> indicated that egg hatching occurs normally in the absence of light (Nakajima and Egusa, 1976; personal observations).

III. Coracidium.

Immediately after emerging from the egg the coracidium is an



Figure 4: Emergence of the coracidium through the operculate opening of the egg. Marker = 7.14um.

oval shape, with movement being in the form of a flexing of the body. After only a few seconds it becomes a spherical shape, and the cilia begin beating with a definite rhythm (Fig. 5a and b). At this stage the coracidium measures 0.045 - 0.050 mm in diameter. The surface has a regular pattern of protruberences which have not been reported on the coracidia of other pseudophyllidean cestodes. The function of these structures is not known.

As a result of water absorption due to osmosis, the coracidium begins to swell up to a diameter of 0.08 mm (Körting, 1975) (Fig. 6a). Associated with this swelling is the curling and fragmenting of the cilia (Fig. 6b). Thomas (1937) noted that in <u>B. rarus</u> the ciliary action was affected by the salinity of the surrounding medium, and that it could be 'stopped and started at will' by altering the salt concentration of the medium.

When first hatched the onchosphere is located in the centre of the coracidium, being surrounded by a layer of bubble-like chambers filled with a transparent solution. These chambers swell greatly in the water, displacing the onchosphere to one of the poles. Contained in these chambers are numerous phospholipid and polysaccharide granules which act as an energy scource for the beating of the cilia (Kuperman, 1973; Grabiec <u>et al.</u>, 1962,1965).

The action of the cilia propels the coracidium forwards, and also causes it to rotate about it's longitudinal axis. Initially it moves towards the surface of the water where it is more likely to come into contact with the copepod intermediate host (Kuperman, 1973). In other pseudophyllidean species this has been shown to be a positive phototaxic response (Dubinina, 1966; Kuperman, 1973; Vogel, 1929). As the coracidium ages, the jerkyswimming action gives way to an oscilatory movement. Eventually this rocking stops



а



b

Figure 5: Coracidium soon after emerging from the egg. Note uncoiled cilia and surface protruberances.

a. Marker = 4.9um. b. Marker = 1um.



а



b

Figure 6: Swollen coracidium 5 hours after hatching. Note coiled and fragmented cilia.

a. Marker = 4.9um. b. Marker = 1um.

and the coracidium sinks to the bottom, where the outer envelope splits, releasing the onchosphere, which rapidly dies.

IV. Procercoid. (Fig 7).

A wide range of cyclopoid copepods have been recorded as intermediate hosts of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. Cyclopoid copepods are predatory (Fryer, 1957). They catch the coracidia when they collide with them (most species) or they actively seek out and attack them.

The sequence of events from the consumption of the coracidium to it's establishment in the copepod haemocoel have not been observed for <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. However, it is likely to be similar to that described for the other Pseudophyllidea. Dubinina (1966) observed that the onchosphere of members of the Ligulidae was separated from the outer envelope of the coracidium by the action of the chitonous structures in the oral cavity of the copepod, or by the muscular action of the pharynx.

Despite the penetration by up to 25 onchospheres the copepod intestine wall remains intact. In the onchospheres of representatives of the order Cyclophyllidea (Reid, 1946, 1948; Silverman and Maneely, 1955) and the cercariae of the Trematoda (Levine <u>et al.</u>, 1948; Evans, 1953) the rapid penetration of the intestinal wall occurs using hooks (Fig. 8) and the secretion of a cytolitic enzyme (possibly hyaluronidase) which temporarily breaks the intracellular bonds of the walls of the host intestine. Although there is no direct evidence for the secretion of a similar enzyme in members of the Pseudophyllidea, flame cells and excretory organs have been observed in the onchospheres of a number of species, eg <u>B. rarus</u> (Thomas, 1937); <u>D. decipens</u> and <u>D. erinacei</u> (Li, 1929); <u>D. latum</u> (Thomas, 1937) and members of the Ligulidae



Figure 7: Procercoid with well developed cercomer.

Marker = 6.25um.



Figure 8: Embryonic hooks on procercoid cercomer. Marker = 1um.

(Dubinina, 1966).

The process of development of the onchosphere into the procercoid has been followed in detail for <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (as <u>B. gowkongensis</u>) by Liao and Shih (1956). This development has also been extensively studied in other pseudophyllidean species, eg <u>D. latum</u> (Vogel, 1930; Guttowa, 1956, 1961; Morozova, 1955); <u>T,nodulosus</u> (Kuperman, 1973); <u>S. solidus</u> (Clarke, 1954; Dubinina, 1966) and members of the Ligulidae (Dubinina, 1966).

Within the copepod haemocoel most of the procercoids developed in the posterior half of the cephalothorax or in the thorax, with the body of the procercoid orientated along the length of the copepod. Soon after penetrating into the body cavity the onchosphere became inactive. As the procercoid, grew occasional contortions and flexing of the body were observed. This activity increased during the formation of the cercoma and the bothria until the consumption of the mature procercoid by a fish host.

In a number of instances procercoids were observed in the antenna of <u>Cyclops agilis</u> (s. str.). These procercoids grew to a maximum size of 1 mm before degenerating and dying. Dubinina (1966) observed this phenomenon in the procercoids of members of the Ligulidae. She believed it to be caused by the onchospheres not loosing their activity when they had penetrated the copepod gut wall.

When five or more procercoids were found in the haemocoel of a single copepod, their development was observed to be uneven; with the size of the procercoids and their establishment in the fish definitive host being influenced by the density of infection. This has also been recorded in a number of pseudophyllidean cestodes, for example in <u>D. latum</u> (Guttowa, 1956, 1963; Halvorsen, 1966); <u>T.</u>

<u>nodulosus</u> (Michajlow, 1953); <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (Körting, 1975) and members of the Ligulidae (Dubinina, 1966). These authors believed that the availability of nutrients and the physical space were responsible for the uneven development. Liao and Shih (1956) working with <u>B. gowkongensis</u> concluded that the density of infection in the copepod was not an important influence on the growth and maturation of the procercoids.

The behaviour of heavily infected copepods was observed to be different. Their movements were sluggish and they were always located on the bottom of the tanks. This behaviour, which is caused by the pressure of the procercoids on the brain and eye, may make the copepods more succeptible to predation (Dubinina, 1966).

V. Plerocercoid.

When a copepod containing an infective procercoid (with bothria) is consumed by a suitable definitive host (Table 1) the parasite can develop into the plerocercoid stage (Fig. 9).

The procercoid is released from the copepod by the mechanical action of the pharangeal teeth (in cyprinids) and by the action of the intestinal digestive secre tions (Dubinina, 1966). Once inside the intestine, the procercoid attaches to the villi of the intestine wall by means of the bothria. <u>B. acheilognathi</u> has a very low specificity and has been recorded from over 50 species of freshwater fishes (table 1), although in several it does not develop to maturity, eg <u>Platichthys flesus</u> and <u>Tilapia zilli</u>.

It is probable that the procercoids become attached to the intestine throughout it s' length depending on their individual ability to attach to the intestine wall. Within one day however,

Table 1: The fish species recorded as definitive hosts forBothriocephalus acheilognathi.

Species	Authority
Abramis brama	Bachinskii, 1965
Acheilognathus rhombea	Yamaguti, 1934
Alburnoides bipunctatus eichwaldi	Danijarov, 1975
Aristichthys nobilis	Laptev, 1980
Aspiolucius esocinus	Babaev, 1965
<u>Aspius aspius</u>	Babaev, 1965
<u>Barbus altianilis altianilis</u>	Baer and Fain, 1968
B. <u>barbus</u>	Buza <u>et al</u> ., 1970
B. brachycephalus	Babaev, 1965
<u>B. bynni</u>	Rysavy and Moravec, 1975
B. capito canocephalus	Babaev, 1965
B. kimberleyensis	Brandt <u>et al</u> ., 1981
<u>B. mattozi</u>	Brandt <u>et</u> <u>al</u> ., 1981
B. trimaculatus	Van As <u>et al</u> ., 1981
<u>Cirrhina</u> chinensis	Liao and Shih, 1956
<u>Cobitis aurata bulgarica</u>	Kakacheva-Avramova, 1977
<u>Crassius auratus</u>	Zitnan, 1983
C. crassius	Zitnan, 1983
Ctenopharyngodon idella	Yeh, 1955
Cyprinus carpio	Bachinskii, 1965
Elopichthys bambusa	Liao and Shih, 1956
Esox lucius	Zitnan, 1983
<u>Gambusia</u> affinis	Babaev, 1965
<u>Gnathopogon elongatus suwae</u>	Yamaguti, 1934

Gobio gobio	Bauer <u>et</u> <u>al</u> ., 1969
Gymnocephalus schraester	Kakacheva-Avramova, 1977
Hypophthalmichthys molitrix	Liao and Shih, 1956
<u>H. nobilis</u>	Buza <u>et</u> <u>al</u> ., 1970
<u>Ictalurus</u> punctatus	Granath and Esch, 1983
Leuciscus idus	Bachinskii, 1965
Luciobrama macrocephalus	Liao and Shih, 1956
Lucioperca lucioperca	Astakova <u>et al</u> ., 1968
Mylopharyngodon aethiops	Liao and Shih, 1956
<u>Nemachilus</u> <u>labiatus</u>	Iksanov <u>et al</u> ., 1976
N. stauchi	Iksanov <u>et al</u> ., 1976
Netemigonus crysoleucas	Hoffman, 1976
<u>Opsariichthys</u> <u>uncirostris</u>	Yamaguti, 1934
<u>Pelecus</u> <u>cuttratus</u>	Babaev, 1965
<u>Perca</u> fluviatilis	Osmanov, 1971
Phoxinus phoxinus	Molnar, 1968
Pimphales promelas	Hoffman, 1976
Platichthys flesus	Personal observations
Pseudaspius leptocephalus	Akhmerov, 1960
Ptychocheilus lucius	Hoffman, 1976
<u>Punutis</u> <u>sarana</u>	Fernando and Fertardo, 1963
<u>Rutilus</u> <u>rutilus</u>	Babaev, 1965
Scardinius erythrophthalmus	Buza <u>et al</u> ., 1970
<u>Siluris</u> glanis	Babaev, 1965
<u>Tilapia</u> <u>zilli</u>	Personal observations
Varichorinus capoeta	Babaev, 1965
<u>Vimba</u> vimba	Bauer <u>et al</u> ., 1969



Figure 9: Plerocercoid soon after entering definitive host. Marker = 7.7um.



Figure 10: Early adult worm, 30 days after entering definitive host (at 18 °C). Marker = 5.9um.

all of the plerocercoids were located in the region 10 to 20 percent of the way along the intestine (0% = mouth, 100% = anus). This

behaviour has been extensively studied in the hymenolepid cestodes, eg <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u> (Chandler, 1939; Chappel <u>et al</u>., 1971) and <u>H. microstoma</u> (Cooreman and DeRyke, 1972).

The plerocercoid stage of the life cycle lasts for a very short time, with the parasite being described as an ad ult worm upon the formation of the first proglottid (Fig. 10).

VI Adult.

<u>B. acheilognathi</u> is typical of most cestodes in that it is hermaphroditic, with each mature proglottid containing both male and female genitalia (see Yamaguti, 1934; Yeh, 1955; Molnár and Murai, 1973 for a detailed description).

The male and female copulatory organs are located in the dorsally situated genital atrium (Fig. 11). The process of copulation and fertilisation has not been studied in <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. Viable eggs are released from single worm infections indicating that self-insemination must occur. However, it is probable that cross insemination is also important. (as described for <u>H. diminuta</u> (Nollen, 1975)). There is a sparcity of information regarding the copulatory methods of cestodes. Copulation involving the insertion of the cirrus of one worm into the vagina of another has been recorded for <u>H. serula</u> (Cox <u>et al</u>., 1956) and <u>Acanthobothrium quadripartium</u> (Williams and McVicar, 1968). It has also been suggested that the cirrus emits semen into the fluid environment, allowing it to migrate into the vagina (Wardle and McLeod, 1952).

When fertilised, the eggs collect within the uterus of each

proglottide before being expelled through the ventrally situated uterine pore (Fig. 12).



Figure 11: Genital atrium on dorsal surface of mature proglottides showing everted cirrus. Marker = 100um.



Figure 12: Uterine pore on ventral surface of mature proglottides. Marker = 100um.

References

- Akhmerov, A. K. (1960) The tapeworms of fishes in the Amur river. Trudi Gelmintologicheskoi Laboratorii. Academiya Nauk SSR 10, 15-31. (In Russian).
- Andrews, C. (1985) Some infectious diseases of freshwater fish with particular reference to Yorkshire. In the Proceedings of the Fourth British Freshwater Fisheries Conference. (In Press).
- Andrews, C.; Chubb, J. C.; Coles, T.; Dearsley, A. (1981) The occurrence of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934 (<u>B. gowkongensis</u>) (cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) in the British Isles. Journal of Fish Diseases 4, 89-93.
- Astakhova, T. V.; Rudometova, N. K.; Stepanova, G. A. (1968) The appearence of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis in the Volga delta. Parazitologiya 2, 507-508. (In Russian).
- Babaev, B. (1965) Distribution of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis Yeh, 1955 (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) in fish of the Kara-Kum canal. Zoologicheskii Zhurnal 44, 1407-1408. (In Russian).
- Bachinskii, V. P. (1965) The definitive hosts (<u>Cyprinus carpio</u>, <u>Abramis brama</u>, <u>Leuciscus rutilus</u> and <u>L. idus</u>) of <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> in the Kremenchung reservoir, USSR. In Raboty po parazitofaune yugo-zapada SSSR. Kishinev; Inst. Zool. Akad. Nauk Moldavskoi SSR. pp16-17. (In Russian).
- Baer, J. G. and Fain, A. (1958) <u>Bothriocephalus (Clestobothrium)</u> <u>kivuensis</u> n.sp., cestode parasite d'un barbeau du lac Kivu. Annales de la Societe Royale Zoologique de Belgique 88,

287-302.

- / Bauer, O. N. and Hoffman, G. L. (1976) Helminth range extension by translocation of fish. In Wildlife diseases. (Proceedings of the 3rd International Wildlife Disease Conference, Munich, 1975.). pp 163-172.
-) Bauer, O. N.; Musselius, V. A.; Strelkov, Yu. A. (1969) Diseases of pond fishes. Izdatel'stvo 'Kulos', Moscow. (English translation TT 72-500 70, U.S. Department of Commerce, National Technical Information Service, Springfield, VA 22151).
 - Brandt, F. de W.; Van As, J. G.; Schoonbee, H. J.; Hamilton-Attwell, V. L. (1981) The occurrence and treatment of Bothriocephalosis in the common carp, <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> in fish ponds with notes on its presence in the largemouth yellowfish <u>Barbus kimberleyensis</u> from the Vaal Dam, Transvaal. Water SA 7, 35-42.
 - Buza, L.; Molnar, K.; Szakolczai, J. (1970) <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>gowkongensis</u> elofordulasa Magyarorszagan. Halaszat (Budapest) 16, 36-37.
 - Chandler, A. C. (1939) The effect of number and age of worms on development of primary and secondary infections with <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u>, in rats, and an investigation into the true nature of premunition in tapeworm infections. American Journal of Hygiene 29, 105-114.
 - Chappell, L. H.; Arai, H. P.; Dike, S. C.; Read, C. P. (1970) Circadian migrations of <u>Hymenolepis</u> (Cestoda) in the intestine. I. Observations on <u>H. diminuta</u> in the rat. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology 34, 31-46.

- Clarke, A. S. (1954) Studies on the life cycle of the pseudophyllidean cestode <u>Schistocephalus</u> <u>solidus</u>. Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London 124, 257-302.
- Cooreman, I. and De Rycke, P. H. (1972) Migratory behaviour of <u>Hymenolepis microstoma</u>. Zeitschrifte fur Parasitenkunde 39, 269-276.
- Cox, D. D.; Ciordia, H.; Jones, A. W. (1956) Variations in <u>Hymenolepis serrula</u> Oswald 1951 (Cestoda: Hymenolepidae) a cestode from the smokey shrew, <u>Sorex fumeus</u> Miller 1895, with special reference to three geographic areas. Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science 31, 287-299.
- Danijarov, M. R. (1975) Parasite fauna of fishes from the spring Chilu-Chor Chashma, Tadzhikistan, with constant and high water temperature. Parazitologiya 9, 312-314. (In Russian).
- Dogiel, V. A.; Petrushevski, G. K.; Polyanski, V. I. (1958) Parasitology of fishes. TFH Publications. 384pp.
- Dubinina, M. N. (1966, translated 1980) Tapeworms (Cestoda, Ligulidae) of the fauna of the USSR. Amerind Publishing Company.
- Edwards, D. J. and Hine, P. M. (1974) Introduction, preliminary handling and diseases of grass carp in New Zealand. New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research 8, 441-454.
- Evans, A. S. (1953) Quantitative demonstration of hyaluronidase activity in cercariae of <u>Schistosoma mansoni</u> by the streptococcal decapsulation test. Experimental Parasitology 2, 417-427.

- Fernando, C. H. and Furtardo, J. I. (1963) Some studies on helminth parasites of freshwater fishes. Proceedings of the first Regional symposium on Scientific Knowledge of Tropical parasites, University of Singapore pp 293-302.
- Fryer, G. (1957) The food of some freshwater cyclopoid copepods and its ecological significance. Journal of Animal Ecology 26, 263-286.
- Grabiec, S.; Guttowa, A.; Michajlow, W. (1962) New data on the ciliated envelope of the coracidium of <u>Triaenophorus</u> <u>nodulosus</u> (Pall.) (Cestoda, Pseudophyllidea). Bulletin de l'Acadamie Polonaise des Sciences 10, 439-441.
- Grabiec, S.; Guttowa, A.; Michajlow, W. (1963) Effect of light stimulus on hatching of coracidia of <u>Diphyllobothrium latum</u> (L.). Acta Parasitica Polonica 11, 229-238.
- Grabiec, S.; Guttowa, A.; Jakutowicz, K.; Michajlow, W. (1965) Studies on high energy compounds in coracidia of <u>Triaenophorus nodulosus</u> (Pall.) in various periods of their life. Acta Parasitica Polonica 13, 19-24.
- Granath, W. O. Jr. and Esch, G. W. (1983) Temperature and other factors in regulating infra population densities and composition of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> in <u>Gambusia</u> affinis. Journal of Parasitology 69, 1116-1124.
- Guttowa, A. (1956) Prove of experimental definition of the main first intermediate host of the broad fish tapeworm <u>Diphyllobothrium latum</u> (L.) - in the area of Poland. Acta Parasitica Polonica 4, 781-802.
- Guttowa, A. (1961) Experimental investigations of the systems procercoids of <u>Diphyllobothrium</u> <u>latum</u> (L.). Acta
Parasitica Polonica 9, 371-408.

- Guttowa, A. (1963) Natural focus of infection of plankton crustaceans with procercoids of <u>Diphyllobothrium</u> <u>latum</u> (L.) in Finland. Acta Parasitologia Polonica 11, 145-152.
- Halvorsen, O. (1966) Studies on the helminth fauna of Norway. VIII An experimental investigation of copepods as first intermediate hosts for <u>Diphyllobothrium</u> norvegicum Vik (Cestoda). Nytt Magasin for Zoologi 13, 83-117.
- Hoffman, G. L. (1976) The Asian tapeworm <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>gowkongensis</u>, in the United States, and research needs in fish parasitology. In Proceedings of the 1976 Fish Farming Conference and Annual Convention of the Catfish Farmers of Texas, Texas Agricultural and Mechanical University College Station, U.S.A. pp 84-90.
- Iksanov, K. I.; Debulya, Yu. A.; Niyazov, B. N. (1976) Main infections and parasitic diseases of fish in Kirgizia and their control. Biological basis of fish farming in the Central Asian Republics and Kazakhstan. (Proceedings of the 15th Scientific Conference. pp 294-296.
- Kakacheva-Avramova, D. (1977) Helminths of fish from the Bulgarian partof the Danube.Khelmintologita,Sofia3, 20-45. (In Bulgarian).
- Kezeik, N.; Fijan, N.; Kajgana, L. (1975) Bothriocephaliasis of carp in S. R. Croatia. veterinarski Arhiv 45, 289-291. (In Croatian).
- Körting, W. (1974) Bothriocephalosis of the carp. Veterinary Medical Review 2, 165-171.
- Körting, W. (1975) Larval development of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> sp. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from carp (<u>Cyprinus carpio</u> L.)

in Germany. Journal of Fish Biology 7, 727-733.

- Kuperman, B. I. (1973) Tapeworms of the genus <u>Triaenophorus</u>, parasites of fishes. Translated for the US Department of the Interior and National Science Foundation. Amerind Publishing Company.
- Laptev, V. I. (1980) The control of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> infection. Veterinariya, Moscow 7, 40-41. (In Russian).
- Levine, M. D.; Garzoli, R. F.; Kuntz, R. E.; Killough, J. H. (1948) On the demonstration of hyaluronidase in cercariae of <u>Schistosoma mansoni</u>. Journal of Parasitology 34, 158-161.
- Li, H. C. (1929) The life histories of <u>Diphyllobothrium decipens</u> and <u>D. erinacei</u>. American Journal of Hygiene 10, 527-550.
- Liao, H.-H. and shih, L.-C. (1956) Contribution to the biology and control of <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> Yeh, a tapeworm parasite in the young grass carp (<u>Ctenopharyngodon idellus</u> C. and V.). Acta Hydrobiologica Sinica 2, 129-185. (In Chinese).
- Malevitskaya, M. A. (1958) The introduction of a parasite with a complex life-cycle, <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955, during acclimation of fish from the Amur river. Dokladi Akademii Nauk SSSR 123, 527-575. (In Russian).
- Meyer, R. P. (1966) A review of the parasites and diseases of fishes in warm-water ponds in North America. In FAO World Symposium of Warm Water Fish Culture, Rome, pp 290-318.
- Michajlow, W. (1953) The intraspecies relationships in the procercoid populations of <u>Triaenophorus lucii</u> (Mull). Acta Parasitologia Polonica 1, 1-28.

Mitchell, A. J. and Hoffman, G. L. (1980) Important tapeworms of

North American freshwater fishes. Fish Disease Leaflet. Fish and Wildlife Service, United States Department of the Interior. No. 59, 18 pp.

- Molnár, K. (1968) <u>Bothriocephalus phoxini</u> sp.n. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from <u>Phoxinus phoxinus</u> L.. Folia Parasitologia, Praha 15, 83-86.
- Molnár, K. and Murai, E. (1973) Morphological studies on <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis Yeh, 1955 and <u>B. phoxini</u> Molnar, 1968 (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea). Parasitologia Hungarica 6,99-108.
- Morozova, M. Ye. (1955) Biology of the early phases of development of the broadfish tapeworm in the conditions of the Karelo-Finskoya, SSR. Dissertation, Karelo-Finsky affiliate, Academy of Science, USSR, pp 1-189. (Cited Kuperman, 1973).
- Mueller, J. F. (1959) The laboratory propogation of <u>Spirometra</u> <u>mansonoides</u> (Mueller, 1935) as an experimental tool. II. Culture and infection of the copepod host, and harvesting the procercoid. Transactions of the American Microscopical Society 78, 245-255.
- Nakajima, K. and Egusa, S. (1976) <u>Bothriocephalus opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) found in the gut of cultured carp, <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> (Linne) -IV. Observations on the egg and coracidium. Fish Pathology 11, 17-22. (In Japanese).
- Nollen, P. M. (1975) Studies on the reproductive system of <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> using autoradiography and transplantation. Journal of Parasitology 61, 100-104. Osmanov, S. O. (1971) Parasites of fishes of Uzbekistan. Taskent 523p. (In Russian).

- Otte, E.; Pfeiffer, H.; Supperer, R. (1972) Massenauftreten von <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> in teichkarpfen. Wiener Tierarztliche Monatsschrift 59, 174-175.
- Panczyk, J. and Zelazny, J. (1974) <u>Khawia sinensis</u> and <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> infections in carp - new parasitic diseases found in Poland. Referativnyi Zhurnal, Biologiya 12 K 140. (In Polish).
- Par, O. (1978) Effect of low intensity infections with the cestode <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> on the condition and physiological indications of the state of health of carp. Buletin VURH Vodnany, CSSR 14, 26-33. (In Russian).
- Par, O. and Parova, J. The tapeworm <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis Yeh, 1955 in the fish ponds in the Vodnany district. Buletin VURH, Vodnany CSSR 2, 34-42.
- Petkov, P. (1972) Occurence of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis in carp bredin artificialwater-reservoirsinthePlevendistrict. Veterinarnomeditsinski Nauki 9, 75-78. (In Bulgarian).
- Pimenova, L. P. (1971) Helminthological evaluation of fish products in relation to cestode infections of carp. Veterinariya, Moskow 48, 67-69. (In Russian).
- Pimenova, L. P. (1973) The infection of the intermediate hosts with <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> larvae in fish-breeding ponds and water reservoirs in the central nechernozem zone. Byulleten' Vsesoyuznogo Instituta Gel'mintologii im. K. I. Skryabina 10, 85-89. (In Russian).
- Pool, D.; Ryder, K.; Andrews, C. (1984) The control of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> in grass carp <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> using praziquantel. Fisheries

Management 15, 31-33.

- Radulescu, J. and Georgescu, R. (1962) Contributii la cunoasterea parasitofaunei speciei <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> in primul an de aclimatizare in R.P. Romina. Bul I. C. P. R. 21, 85-91.
- Reichenbach-Klinke, H. and Elkan, E. (1965) The principal diseases of lower vertebrates. Book 1 Diseases of fishes. TFH Publications 205pp.
- Roberts, R. J. (Ed.) (1978) Fish Pathology. Bailliere Tindall. 318pp.
- Reid, W. H. (1946) Penetration glands in tapeworm onchospheres. Biological Bulletin 91, 232.
- Reid, W. H. (1948) Penetration glands in cyclophyllidean onchospheres. Transactions of the American Microscopical Society 67, 177-182.
- Rowan, W. B. (1956) The mode of hatching of the eggs of <u>Fasciola</u> <u>hepatica</u>. Experimental Parasitology 5, 118-137.
- Rysavy, B. and Moravec, F. (1975) <u>Bothriocephalus aegyptiacus</u> sp. n. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from <u>Barbus bynni</u>, and it's life cycle. Vestnik Ceskoslovenske Spolecnosti Zoologicke 39, 68-72.
- Sarig, S. (1971) Diseases of fishes. Book 3: The prevention and treatment of diseases of warm-water fishes under subtropical conditions with special emphasis on intensive fish farming. TFH Publications. 127pp.
- Silverman, P. H. and Maneely, R. B. (1955) Studies on the biology of some tapeworms of the genus <u>Taenia</u>. III. The role of the secreting gland of the hexacanth embryo in the penetration of the intestinal mucosa of the intermediate host, and some of it's histochemical reactions. Annales of

Tropical Medicine and Parasitology 49, 326-330.

- Smyth, J. D. and Clegg, J. A. (1959) Egg-shell formation in trematodes and cestodes. Experimental Parasitology 8, 286-323.
- Stott, B. (1977) On the question of the introduction of the grass carp (<u>Ctenopharyngodon</u> idella Val.) into the United Kingdom. Fisheries Management 8, 63-71.
- Thomas, L. J. (1930) Notes on the hatching of <u>Diphyllobothrium</u> latum eggs. Journal of Parasitology 16, 244-245.
- Thomas, L. J. (9137) Environmental relations and life history of the tapeworm <u>Bothriocephalus</u> rarus Thomas. Journal of Parasitology 23, 133-152.
- Urazbaev, A. and Allaniyazova, T. (1977) Biology and life-cycle of <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955 (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) in the Amu-Dar'ya river area. Diseases of fish and their control. Proceedings of the 2nd Regional Scientific Conference on Parasites and Diseases of Fish and their Control in Kazakhstan and the Central Asian Republics, 10-12 Oct, 1977, Alma Acta. pp 147-150. (In Russian).
- Vogel, H. (1929) Studien zur Entwicklung von <u>Diphyllobothrium</u>. Zeitschrifte fur Parasitenkunde 2, 213-222.
- Vogel, H. (1930) Studien zur Entwicklung von <u>Diphyllobothrium</u>. Zeitschrifte fur Parasitenkunde 2, 5.
- Wardle, R. A. and McLeod, J. A. (1952) The zoology of tapeworms. University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis.
- Williams, H. H. and McVicar, A. (1968) Sperm transfer in the Tetraphyllidea (Platyhelminthes: Cestoda). Nytt Magasin

for zoologi 16, 61-71.

- Yamaguti, S. (1934) Studies on the helminth fauna of Japan. Part 4, Cestodes of fishes. Japanese Journal of Zoology 6, 1-112.
- Yeh, L. S. (1955) On a new tapeworm <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis n. sp. (Cestoda: Bothriocephalidae) from freshwater fish in China. Acta Zoologica Sinica 7, 69-74.
- Zitnan, R. (1983) Some epizootilogical aspects of fish Bothriocephalosis. In Abstracts of the 1st International Symposium of Ichthyoparasitology. Parasites and Parasitic diseases of fish, Ceske Budejovice. p23.

Part I

The taxonomic status of the <u>Bothriocephalus</u> species

parasitising cyprinid fishes

Introduction

The zoological classification of the tapeworms has been subject to numerous alterations and additions since the first larval fish tapeworms were described and figured by Redi in 1684 (Wardle and Macleod, 1952). Foundations for the present systematics were laid down by Carus (1863) based largely on the morphological characteristics of the scolex. Attempts to formulate a definitive classification based on this have resulted in considerable disagreement and confusion between leading authorities (Wardle and Mcleod, 1952; Stunkard, 1983).

The generally accepted classification adopted by Wardle and Mcleod (1952) allows the five to six thousand known tapeworm species to be divided into two classes, the Cestoda and Cestodaria, which together are usually subdivided into 13 orders. Using this scheme the genus Bothriocephalus can be classified as follows:

Phylum	Platyhelminthes	Carus, 1863
Class	Cestoda	Monticelli, 1892
Order	Pseudophyllidea	Carus, 1863
Family	Bothriocephalidae	Blanchard, 1849
Genus	<u>Bothriocephalus</u>	Rudolphi, 1808

Ten species of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> have been described from cyprinid fishes, namely: <u>B. granularis</u> Rudolphi, 1810; <u>B.</u> <u>capillicollis</u> Megnin, 1883; <u>B. acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934; <u>B.</u> <u>opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti, 1934; <u>B. fluviatilis</u> Yamaguti, 1952; <u>B.</u> <u>sowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955; <u>B. kivuensis</u> Baer and Fain, 1958;

<u>Schyzocotyle</u> (=<u>Bothriocephalus</u>) <u>fluviatilis</u> Akhmerov, 1960; <u>B.</u> phoxini Molnár, 1968; and <u>B. aegyptiacus</u> Rysavy and Moravec, 1975.

There are considerable doubts surrounding the validity of these species, resulting largely from the dubious characteristics used for their specific identity, in particular host specificity and the external morphological features.

Recently Dubinina (1982) has drawn attention to the confusion concerning the taxonomic status of the species of the genus <u>Bothriocephalus</u> parasitising cyprinid fishes. She concluded that in the U.S.S.R. (and in Europe) there were two species: the widely distributed <u>B. opsariichthydis</u> (synonyms <u>B. gowkongensis</u> and <u>B.</u> <u>phoxini</u>) and the less prevalent <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (synonym <u>S.</u> <u>fluviatilis</u>) which could be distinguished by their differing scolex morphology. This opposed the generally accepted view of Molnár (1977) that the four species of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> described from European cyprinid fishes were in fact one and, in agreement with Körting (1975) that priority should be given to the name <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> with <u>B. opsariichthydis</u>, <u>B. gowkongensis</u> and <u>B.</u> phoxini as synonyms.

Wardle and Mcleod (1952) stated that for the cestodes in general "...no two specimens when fixed will be identical in shape and size of holdfast and body even if they were approximately so when alive". The aim of chapter 1 is to examine the consequences of this comment on the proposals made by Dubinina (1982) and to critically review the taxonomic history of the genus <u>Bothriocephalus</u> parasitising cyprinid fishes.

٠.

Four species of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> have ben recorded from Africa. Two of these, <u>B. aegyptiacus</u> and <u>B. kivuensis</u> are specific to African freshwater fishes. In chapter 2 the biology and morphology of these species are critically examined in order to investigate their taxonomic status.

References.

- Akhmerov, A. K. (1960) The tapeworms of fishes in the Amur river. Trudi Gelminthologicheskoi Laboratorii. Akademiya Nauk SSR 10, 15-31. (In Russian)
- Baer, J. G. and Fain, A. (1958) <u>Bothriocephalus (Clesthobothrium)</u> <u>kivuensis</u> n.sp., cestode parasite d'un barbeau du lac Kivu. Annales de la Societe Royale Zoologique de Belgique 88, 287-302.
- Dubinina, M. N. (1982) On the synonymy of species of the genus <u>Bothriocephalus</u> (Cestoda, Bothriocephalidae), parasites of Cyprinidae of the USSR. Parazitologiya 16, 41-45. (In Russian).
- Körting, W. (1975) Larval development of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> sp. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from carp (<u>Cyprinus carpio</u> L.) in Germany. Journal of Fish Biology 7, 727-733.
- Megnin, P. (1883) Notes sur les helminths rapportes des cotes de la Laponie par M. le professeur Pouchet. Bulletin de la Societe Zoologique de France 8, 153-156.
- Molnár, K. (1968) <u>Bothriocephalus phoxini</u> sp. n. (Cestoda, Pseudophyllidea) from <u>Phoxinus phoxinus</u> L. Folia Parasitologica, Praha 15, 83-86.
- Molnar, K. (1977) On the synonyms of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934. Parasitologia Hungarica 10, 61-62.
- Rudolphi, C. A. (1810) Entozoorum sive vermium intestinalium historia naturalis. II. Pars. 2, xii + 386 pp. Amstelaedami.
- Ryšavý, B. and Moravec, F. (1975) <u>Bothriocephalus aegyptiacus</u> sp. n. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from <u>Barbus bynni</u>, and its

life cycle. Vestnik Ceskoslovenske Spolecnosti Zoologicke 39, 68-72.

- Stunkard, H. W. (1983) Evolution and systematics. In Biology of the Eucestoda. (Edited by Arme, C. and Pappas, P. W.). pp. 1-25. Academic Press.
- Yamaguti, S. (1934) Studies on the helminth fauna of Japan. Part 4. Cestodes of fishes. Japanese Journal of Zoology 6, 1-112.
- Yamaguti, S. (1952) Studies on the helminth fauna of Japan. Part 49. Cestodes of fishes, II. Acta Medicinae Okayama 8, 1-76.
- Yeh, L. S. (1955) On a new tapeworm <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis n. sp. (Cestoda: Bothriocephalidae) from freshwater fish in China. Acta Zoologica Sinica 7, 69-74.

Chapter 1

A critical scanning electron microscope study of the scolex of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934, with a review of the taxonomic history of the genus <u>Bothriocephalus</u> parasitising cyprinid fishes

Introduction

The specific identity of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> species imported into fish farms in the British Isles from Europe has been a matter of conjecture since their first reported introduction (Andrews <u>et al.</u>, 1981). This was a consequence of the extreme variation in the size of the living worms. Adult <u>Bothriocephalus</u> have no hard structures, and are active worms, capable of considerable mobility of the body, especially the scolex. Therefore, depending on the fixation process, a considerable variation in morphology can be induced. The species described from cyprinids are very similar in morphology, so much so that it is a matter of conjecture whether the differences are specific, intraspecific or artefacts of fixation.

It is the purpose of this chapter to examine the suggestion of Dubinina (1982) that, for the identification of species of this genus, special attention should be paid to the structure of the scolex; and to clarify the taxonomic status of some members of the genus.

Materials and methods

In order to demonstrate constancy or variation in scolex morphology in one species of <u>Bothriocephalus</u>, all the worms were obtained from a single 0+ <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> (Valenciennes) (Cyprinidae). Ten worms of various sizes were fixed using each of the following procedures: 1. <u>in situ</u> in the host intestine using a 10% formaldehyde solution; 2. removed from the intestine and immediately placed in absolute alcohol at 25° C; and 3. removed from the intestine, relaxed in distilled water at 10° C for 5 minutes followed by immersion in a 10% formaldehyde solution. After fixation, specimens in formaldehyde were washed twice in distilled water and dehydrated using an ethanol series. All scolices were treated in a Polaron E3000 critical point drier, followed by coating with 60% gold-palladium using a Poloron E5100 sputter coater and viewed using a Philips 501B scanning electron microscope.

<u>Bothriocephalus</u> plerocercoid and early adult stages were reared in the laboratory using the methods detailed by Pool (1984). The plerocercoids and early adults were allowed to develop within the fish intestine for 16 and 40 days respectively at 20°C before removal. To facilitate handling, owing to their small size, these specimens were placed in a cone of filter paper for fixation using method 3 (above). After drying, the contents of the cone were emptied onto double-sided adhesive tape for attachment to the viewing stub, or the apex of the cone was mounted directly on the stub. The specimens were sputter-coated and viewed as indicated above.

Results

The results are presented as a series of photographs of representative scolices obtained using each of the three fixation procedures.

Figs. 1-4 show scolices fixed <u>in situ</u> in the intestine of the host. They were rounded, the bothria were short and orientated towards the apex of the scolex (anterior) and the apical disc was very apparent, with, in some individuals (Figs. 2-4) four distinct lobes. There was little variation in the size or form of the scolices fixed in situ.

Figs. 5-7 demonstrate scolices fixed immediately after removal from the intestine. In this instance the scolices were not completely relaxed, the bothria were open and the apical discs were not obvious. The shape of the scolex was a result of the state of contraction or extension of the musculature at the moment of fixation. Accordingly, considerable variation in the form of the scolex resulted from extended (Figs. 5 and 6) to contracted (Fig. 7).

Figs. 8-12 illustrate scolices relaxed in distilled water prior to fixation. These scolices were all an inverted heart-shape with a characteristic apical disc (Fig. 12). In most of these relaxed specimens the bothria were closed and were approximately two-thirds the length of the scolex. The variation between the two bothria of one individual scolex is shown in Figs. 10 and 11. One bothrium (Fig. 10) is contracted around a piece of intestinal tissue, while

the other (Fig. 11) is relaxed. The scolices which were relaxed prior to fixation showed very little variation in morphology.

The apical disc shown on adult <u>Bothriocephalus</u> fixed <u>in situ</u> in the intestine (Figs. 1-4) and in the relaxed individuals (Figs. 8-12), was also visible on late plerocercoid (Fig. 13) and early adult stages (Fig. 14) of the life cycle.

- Figures 1-4 <u>B. acheilognathi</u> scolices from <u>C. idella</u> fixed <u>in</u> <u>situ</u> in the host intestine using 10% formaldehyde solution.
 - 1. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Bar micron markers are 100 um each.
 - 1a. <u>Schyzocotyle fluviatilis</u>. From Akhmerov, 1960: Fig.
 4,1. p. 20.
 - Viewed at 30 kv using back-scattered electrons.
 Markers 76.92 um each.
 - 3. Viewed at 3.6 kv. Markers 100 um each.
 - B. <u>opsariichthydis</u>. From Dubinina, 1971: Fig. 10, p.
 90.
 - 3b. <u>B. gowkongensis</u> or <u>B. opsalichthydis</u> (=opsariichthydis). From Korting, 1974: Fig. 2 p. 168.









3





3b

4. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 88.33 um each.

- 4a. <u>Schyzocotyle fluviatilis</u>. From Akhmerov, 1960: Fig.
 3,1, p. 20.
- Figures 5-7 <u>B. acheilognathi</u> scolices from <u>C. idella</u> fixed immediately after removal from intestine by immersion 'in absolute alcohol at 25°C.
 - 5. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 71.43 um each.
 - 5a. <u>B. gowkongensis</u>. From Yeh, 1955: Fig. 2 between pp.73-74. Bar marker = 100 um.
 - 5b. <u>B. gowkongensis</u> or <u>B. opsalichthydis (= opsariichthydis)</u>. From Körting, 1974: Fig. 1, p. 168.
 - 5c. <u>B. gowkongensis</u> or <u>B. opsalichthydis</u> (= <u>opsariichthydis</u>). From Korting, 1974: Fig. 3, p. 169.







5





5a



5 c

- 6. Viewed at 3.6 kv. Markers 76.92 um each.
- 6a. <u>B. gowkongensis</u>. From Yeh, 1955: Fig. 1 between pp. 73-74. Bar marker = 100 um.
- 6b. <u>B. opsariichthydis</u>. From Yamaguti, 1934: Fig. 23, p.17.
- 7. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 71.43 um each.
- 7a. <u>B. gowkongensis</u>. From Yeh 1955: Fig. 3 between pp. 73-74.









7



7a

- Figures 8-12 <u>B. acheilognathi</u> scolices from <u>C. idella</u>, relaxed in distilled water at 10°C for 5 minutes prior to fixation in 10% formaldehyde solution.
 - 8. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 100 um each.
 - 8a. <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. From Yamaguti, 1934: Fig. 20, p.15.
 - 8b. <u>B. gowkongensis</u>. From Molnár & Murai, 1973: Fig. 2 opposite p. 102. Bar marker = 100 um.
 - 8c. <u>B. phoxini</u>. From Molnár & Murai, 1973: Fig. 7 opposite p. 103. Bar marker = 50 um.
 - 9. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 76.92 um each.
 - 9a. <u>B. gowkongensis</u>. From Musselius, 1973: Fig. 8a p. 28.













8 b

- 9b. <u>B. gowkongensis</u>. From Molnár & Murai, 1973: Fig. 1 opposite p. 102. Bar marker = 100 um.
- 9c. B. phoxini. From Molnár, 1968: Fig. 1D p. 184.
- Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 71.43 um each. Same scolex as Fig. 11. Bothrium contracted around intestinal material.
- 11. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 71.43 um each. Same scolex as Fig. 10. Other bothrium relaxed.
- 11a. <u>B. gowkongensis</u>. From Protasova, 1977: Fig. 14a p. 88. Bar marker = 200 um.
- 11b. <u>B. phoxini</u>. From Molnár & Murai, 1973: Fig. 8 opposite p. 103. Bar marker = 50 um.





9c



10



11





11b

12. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 71.43 um each.

12a. S. fluviatilis. From Akhmerov, 1960: Fig. 4 p. 20.

- Figure 13. <u>B. acheilognathi</u> late plerocercoid relaxed in distilled water at 10°C for 5 minutes, prior to fixation in 10% formaldehyde. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 7.7 um each.
 - Figure 14. <u>B. acheilognathi</u> early adult relaxed in distilled water at 10^oC for 5 minutes, prior to fixation in 10% formaldehyde. Viewed at7.2 kv. Markers 5.9 um each.







Discussion

The results illustrated in this paper clearly demonstrate the well-known fact that the shape of soft-bodied helminths will vary according to their treatment during autopsy and fixation. To provide a controlled situation, gravid <u>Bothriocephalus</u> from a single species-infection in one individual fish were used, and, therefore, any variation was owing to intraspecific variation or artefacts of fixation. In fact, specified conditions and methods of fixation appeared more significant in affecting scolex morphology than intraspecific variation, which should not surprise anyone who has worked with living pseudophyllidean cestodes, as in many species the ability of the scolex to change shape can be clearly seen <u>in vitro</u> (Brandt <u>et al.</u>, 1981).

How does this conclusion influence the proposals of Dubinina (1982) and others concerning the species found in cyprinid fishes? It is convenient to review the literature briefly and where possible to relate the scolex characteristics as given in the literature to the three conditions used in this study.

Yamaguti (1934) described <u>B. acheilognathi</u> from a single worm 80 mm long found in the intestine of <u>Acheilognathus rhombea</u> (Temminck & Schlegel) (Cyprinidae) from Lake Ogura, Japan. Although he thought the worm had a somewhat atypical scolex, the internal anatomy justified its inclusion in the genus <u>Bothriocephalus</u>. His illustration is shown alongside Fig. 8. It appears to represent the scolex typical of a worm fixed after relaxation. In the same publication Yamaguti (1934) described a second species of

Bothriocephalus from a cyprinid fish Opsariichthys uncirostris (Temminck & Schlegel) from Lake Biwa and the River Yodo, Japan. Yamaguti misspelt the generic name of the host. It should have been Opsariichthys, hence the cestode was incorrectly named B. opsalichthydis, although later Yamaguti (1959) emended the spelling to opsariichthydis. B. opsariichthydis was a common worm, up to more than 100 mm long with an inverted heart-shaped scolex with a prominent terminal disc and deep bothridial grooves. His illustration of the scolex is reproduced alongside Fig. 6. It represents a worm fixed immediately after removal from the host intestine. Yamaguti (1934) noted in B. opsariichthydis that the eggs (collected in July) contained embryos which were segmented but not yet fully embryonated. This point is important later in connection with B. gowkongensis. Yamaguti (1952) subsequently described a third species, B. fluviatilis, from a Japanese cyprinid fish Hymenophysa curta (Temminck & Schlegel) also from the River Yodo, Japan. B. fluviatilis was a small worm 22.5 mm long, presumably not gravid, as no details of egg dimensions were provided. A mature proglottis was figured (Yamaguti, 1952, Plate I, Fig. 1, opposite p. 76), but not the scolex.

Yeh (1955) described <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>gowkongensis</u> from <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> from Gowkong, near Canton, South China. The worms were 35-80 mm long, with a large inverted heart-shaped scolex. Yeh figured three scolices which are reproduced as Figs. 5a, 6a and 7a. They correspond to worms fixed immediately after removal from the fish intestine, and show a range of variation characteristic of this situation. In <u>B. gowkongensis</u> the eggs were fully embryonated

when laid, according to Yeh the first <u>Bothriocephalus</u> species recognised as showing this phenomenon. Yeh found variation in a large number of specimens of <u>B. gowkongensis</u> and as a consequence suggested that <u>B. opsariichthydis</u> was a synonym of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. It should be noted that Yeh (1955) was the first to correct the spelling of <u>B. opsalichthydis</u> to <u>B. opsariichthydis</u>.

In 1956 Liao & Shih demonstrated that the degree of embryonation of the eggs of <u>B. gowkongensis</u> varied with season and water temperature. Eighty-nine percent of the eggs were fullyembryonated on release from April to October (24-29°C), whereas only 2% were from November until February (14.8-21.3°C).

Baer & Fain (1958) also suggested that <u>B. opsalichthydis</u> (=<u>opsariichthydis</u>) was a synonym of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> because they could not separate the two species on morphological features. Yamaguti (1959) accepted that <u>B. opsariichthydis</u> and <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> were synonyms as well as<u>animending the orignal spelling</u> of the specific epithet opsalichthydis as indicated earlier.

It is interesting to note that Baer & Fain (1958) considered <u>Clestobothrium crassiceps</u> (Rudolphi, 1819) to be in the same genus as <u>B. acheilognathi</u> and <u>B. kivuensis</u> Baer & Fain, 1958 on the basis of their similar scolex morphology. They reduced <u>Clestobothrium</u> to a subgenus and renamed the three species <u>B. (C.) crassiceps</u>, <u>B.</u> (C.) acheilognathi and <u>B. (C.) kivuensis</u>. This view was supported by Tadros (1967), who transferred <u>B. acheilognathi</u> and <u>B. kivuensis</u> to the genus <u>Clestobothrium</u> and amended the diagnosis of the genus. An examination of the descriptions of the genera <u>Clestobothrium</u>

and <u>Bothriocephalus</u> provided by Wardle and McLeod (1952) indicates that they differ most notably in the presence of operculate eggs in <u>Bothriocephalus</u> and their absence in <u>Clestobothrium</u>. Therefore, despite the similarity in scolex morphology, <u>C. crassiceps</u> should not be included in the same genus as <u>B. acheilognathi</u>.

<u>Bothriocephalus phoxini</u> Molnár, 1968 was described from <u>Phoxinus phoxinus(L.)</u> (Cyprinidae) in a tarn near Lake Balaton, Hungary. In this host the worms had a maximum length of 45 mm and an inverted heart-shaped scolex. A terminal disc and two bothria were readily visible in relaxed specimens. Such a description corresponds to our findings (Figs. 8-12).

According to Molnár (1968) the range of the host <u>P. phoxinus</u>, the endemic nature of the infection he discovered and the small size of individuals of <u>B. phoxini</u>, readily served to differentiate them from all known European bothriocephalids and also from <u>B.</u> <u>opsariichthydis</u> from the Far East. The finding of <u>B. gowkongensis</u> in Hungary resulted in a comparison of the morphology of <u>B.</u> <u>gowkongensis</u> and <u>B. phoxini</u> by Molnár & Murai (1973) which, according to them substantiated the separation of the two species.

Molnár & Murai (1973) fixed their materials using mostly hot 5% formalin. Molnár (1977) by means of cross infection experiments using eggs from tapeworms found in <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> and <u>Phoxinus</u> <u>phoxinus</u>, demonstrated that typical <u>B. gowkongensis</u> worms were recovered from <u>C. carpio</u> and typical <u>B. phoxini</u> specimens were recovered from <u>P. phoxinus</u>.

Otte <u>et al</u>. (1972) considered the <u>Bothriocephalus</u> species found in <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> imported into Austria from Hungary to be <u>B</u>.

acheilognathi, with B. opsariichthydis as a synonym. Körting (1974) commented about "B. gowkongensis or B. opsalichthydis", he stated "the name of the species is not yet finally established". By 1975 Körting observed that, in the event of the three species B. acheilognathi, B. opsariichthydis and B. gowkongensis being accepted as synonymous, the priority should be with B. acheilognathi. The Bothriocephalus species he studied from Cyprinus carpio in southern Bavaria appeared to be B. opsariichthydis as no fully embryonated eggs were detected when they were expelled from the uterus. However, in the light of Liao and Shih (1956) establishing that the maturity of the eggs of B. gowkongensis was dependent upon the season of the year and that the tapeworm could deliver both fully embryonated and half-embryonated eggs, together with the fact that B. opsariichthydis and B. gowkongensis could not be differentiated by morphological features, Körting (1975) favoured the opinion that the two species were identical. As a consequence of the crossinfection experiments performed by Molnár (1977) he proposed that the names B. opsariichthydis Yamaguti, 1934, B. gowkongensis Yeh, 1955 and B. phoxini Molnar, 1968 were synonyms of a single species which, by virtue of priority, should be called B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934.

In Japan, Nakajima & Egusa (1974) examined <u>Bothriocephalus</u> in <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> from farm ponds in Nagano, Yamagata and Akita prefectures. They decided that the criteria for identification were shape and structure of the body. In these characters their species resembled <u>B. acheilognathi</u>, <u>B. opsariichthydis</u>, <u>B. fluviatilis</u> and

<u>B. gowkongensis</u>, all of which had been found in Japan or China. Their species differed from <u>B. gowkongensis</u> however, in that the egg was never embryonated when laid. The body length of their worms (average of 10 of the largest mature individuals, 173 mm) was close to <u>B. opsariichthydis</u> (more than 100 mm long according to Yamaguti, 1934), but differed from <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (about 80 mm) and <u>B. fluviatilis</u> (22 mm). They proposed that <u>B. acheilognathi</u> and <u>B.</u> <u>fluviatilis</u> were young stages of <u>B. opsariichthydis</u>. Their Fig. 2 A-D clearly revealed how the form of the scolex was changed according to the state of contraction and angle of view.

To summarise at this point, the opinion held by most authorities was that there was one species in cyprinids (Nakajima & Egusa, 1974; Körting, 1975; Molnár, 1977). This view was adopted by Andrews <u>et al</u>. (1981) and Chubb (1981) when <u>Bothriocephalus</u> was found in three fish farms in the British Isles during 1979.

However, Dubinina (1982) proposed an alternative view, based largely on the hypothesis that for the identification of the species of the genus <u>Bothriocephalus</u> special attention should be given to the structure of the scolex. On the basis of scolex morphology she suggested that <u>B. opsariichthydis</u> and <u>B. acheilognathi</u> were distinct species. She further suggested that <u>B. gowkongensis</u> and <u>B. phoxini</u> were synonyms of <u>B. opsariichthydis</u>, and that <u>Schyzocotyle</u> fluviatilis Akhmerov, 1960 was a synonym of B. acheilognathi.

The figures of the scolex of <u>Schyzocotyle fluviatilis</u> provided by Akhmerov (1960) clearly show it to be a bothriocephalid, as proposed by Dubinina (1982). These are given here as Figs. 1a, 4a and 12a. The sketch of the scolex in Fig. 4a is perplexing,
although it may correspond to my Fig. 4 or may be a damaged scolex. The details of the proglottis confirm the worm as a Bothriocephalus.

Dubinina (1982) suggested that Yamaguti (1959) confirmed the independence of the two species B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934 and B. opsariichthydis Yamaguti, 1934. Yamaguti (1959) has two entries: p. 44 "B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934, in Acheilognathus rhombea; Japan. Also in Gnathopogon elongatus suwae, Japan." and p. 46 "B. opsariichthydis Yamaguti, 1934,¹) syn. of B. acheilognathi - Yeh, 1955, in Opsariichthys uncirostris; Japan." The footnote on p. 46 "1) Orignal spelling opsalichthydis emended to reads: opsariichthydis". In my opinion the dash between the two sections of the entry for B. opsariichthydis on p. 46 leaves no doubt that Yamaguti accepted the proposal of Yeh (1955) that B. opsariichthydis was a synonym of B. acheilognathi. In this respect Körting (1975) and Protasova (1977) were correct. Nakajima & Egusa (1974) also agreed that the two species were synonyms, however they opted for the alternative view, of B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934 as a synonym of B. opsariichthydis Yamaguti, 1934.

A number of other authors have figured a scolex of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> from cyprinid fishes, including Dubinina (1971), Musselius (1973) a nd Protasova (1977). The Dubinina (1971) scolex (named as <u>B. opsariichthydis</u>) corresponds broadly to my Fig. 3, a specimen fixed <u>in situ</u> in 10% formalin; that of Musselius (1973, as <u>B. gowkongensis</u>) approaches my Fig. 9, an individual relaxed in cold water and fixed in 10% formaldehyde, and that of Protasova (1977, as <u>B. gowkongensis</u>) resembles my Fig. 11, a specimen also fixed after

relaxation.

Some other <u>Bothriocephalus</u> species need a mention. <u>B.</u> <u>capillicollis</u> Megnin, 1883 was found in a 'carpe de mer' from the coast of Norwegian Lapland. According to Gozmany (1979) the 'carpe de mer' is <u>Labrus bergylta</u> Ascanius, 1767 (Labridae) and is therefore not relevant here. Linstow (1889) listed <u>B. capillicollis</u> from <u>Idus melanotus</u> and Zschokke (1903) from <u>Leuciscus idus</u>, however they provide no further information, therefore I agree with Protasova (1977) that this form should be treated as a <u>species</u> <u>inquirenda</u>. Rudolphi (1810) described <u>B. granularis</u> in 'Cyprinus' observed by Zeder in 1788. The description given by Rudolphi provides too little information for precise evaluation of the worm, so that again I agree with Protasova (1977) that it should be treated as a species inquirenda.

<u>B. kivuensis</u>, from <u>Barbus altianalis altianalis</u> Blgr. in Lake Kivu, has a scolex resembling that of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. However, its great length, 700 mm to 1 m, more than twice as long as the largest <u>B. acheilognathi</u> specimen I have examined, and the presence of a vaginal sphincter suggest that it is a distinct species. <u>B.</u> <u>aegyptiacus</u> Ryšavý & Moravec, 1975 was recorded from <u>Barbus bynni</u> in the River Nile. The scolex is similar to that of '<u>B.</u> <u>opsalichthydis</u>' but it has a larger number of testes (100 - 200 as compared with 60 - 100) and is somewhat larger (502 - 611 x 3.8 -4.3 mm compared to 100 x 1.25 mm). A critical investigation into their taxonomic status is presented in chapter 2.

Prigli (1974, 1975) noted the role of aquatic birds in the spread of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (as <u>B. gowkongensis</u>) in Hungary.

Borgarenko (1981) observed this phenomenon in Tadzhikstan and figured a scolex from the intestine of the little bittern <u>Ixobrychus</u> <u>mintus</u> L. Shinde and Jadhav (1977) recorded a single specimen of <u>B.</u> <u>opsariichthydis</u> in a marine fish <u>Histophorus gladius</u> at Veraval on the west coast of India. Although they described and figured this worm I doubt their identification and suspect it was a marine species of <u>Bothriocephalus</u>.

Conclusions

The conclusion of Dubinina (1982) that <u>B. opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti, 1934 and <u>B. acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934 are separate species, is not supported by my results as shown in Figs. 1-14. The scolex characters utilized by her in this instance need represent no more than variation of form produced by different methods of fixation. Thus, as indicated earlier, the Yamaguti (1934) specimen of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> has a scolex form consistent with a worm fixed after relaxation but viewed from a semi-dorsoventral angle (as Fig. 8). The Yamaguti (1934) specimen of <u>B. opsariichthydis</u> (as <u>B. opsalichthydis</u>) has a scolex corresponding with a worm fixed immediately on removal from the host intestine (as Fig. 6). The results confirm the view of Dubinina (1982) that <u>Schyzocotyle</u> <u>fluviatilus</u> Akhmerov, 1960 is a species of <u>Bothriocephalus</u>, it having a scolex corresponding to Fig. 1, a worm fixed <u>in situ</u> in the host intestine.

I propose the continued use of the name <u>B. acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934 in preference to that of <u>B. opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti, 1934, as emended by Yeh (1955) and Yamaguti (1959). Although Yamaguti reserved the specific diagnosis of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> until additional specimens came to hand, he did describe a gravid individual, and there is no difficulty with the spelling of the specific epithet as exists for <u>B. opsariichthydis</u>. In addition the name <u>B. acheilognathi</u> has been accepted into common usage, and no rule of priority is contravened by its continued use. I agree with the other authorities noted earlier in this section that <u>B.</u>

<u>opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti, 1934, <u>B. fluviatilis</u> Yamaguti, 1952, <u>B.</u> <u>gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955, <u>B. phoxini</u> Molnar, 1968 and <u>Schyzocotyle</u> <u>fluviatilis</u> Akhmerov, 1960 are synonyms of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934.

In conclusion, this experiment with cestodes having highly mobile scolices without any hard structures has clearly shown the importance of adopting a standarized fixation procedure. It has also shown how if a standardized procedure is not used considerable taxonomic confusion can result. I agree with Dubinina (1982) that scolex characteristics play an important role in the identification of species of the genus <u>Bothriocephalus</u>, and also other cestodes, but only if the exact conditions of fixation are clearly stated.

References

- Akhmerov, A.K. (1960). The tapeworms of fishes in the Amur river. <u>Trudi Gelmintologicheskoi Laboratorii</u>. <u>Akademiya Nauk SSr</u>, **10**, 15-31. (In Russian).
- Andrews, C.A., Chubb, J.C., Coles, T., Dearsley, A. (1981). The occurence of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934 (<u>B.</u> <u>gowkongensis</u>) (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) in the British Isles. <u>Journal of Fish Diseases</u>, **4**, 89-93.
- Baer, J.G. & Fain, A. (1958). <u>Bothriocephalus (Clestobothrium)</u> <u>kivuensis</u> n. sp., cestode parasite d'un barbeau du lac Kivu. <u>Annales de la Societe Royale Zoologique de Belgique</u>, **88**, 287-302.
- Borgarenko, L.F. (1981). Helminths of birds in Tadzhikistan. Book 1 Cestodes. Dushanbe, U.S.S.R.; "Donish" pp. 19-20 (In Russian).
- Brandt, F. de W., Van As, J.G., Schoonbee, H.J. & Hamilton-Attwell, U.L. (1981). The occurrence and treatment of bothriocephalosis in the common carp, <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> in fish ponds with notes on its presence in the largemouth yellowfish <u>Barbus kimberleyensis</u> from the Vaal Dan, Transvaal. Water SA, 7, 35-42.
- Chubb, J.C. (1981). The Chinese tapeworm <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934 (synonym <u>B. gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955) in Britain. <u>Proceedings of the 2nd British Freshwater</u> <u>Fisheries Conference</u>, 40-51.
- Dubinina, M.N. (1971). Cestodes of fish in the Amur basin. Parazitologicheskii Sbornik, 25, 77-119 (In Russian).

- Dubinina, M.N. (1982). On the synonymy of species of the genus <u>Bothriocephalus</u> (Cestoda, Bothriocephalidae), parasites of Cyprinidae of the USSR. <u>Parazitologiya</u>, **16**, 41-45. (In Russian)
- Gozmany, L. (1979). Septemlingual dictionary of the names of European animals. I. 42 + 1171 pp. Akademiai Kiado, Budapest.
- Körting, W. (1974). Bothriocephalosis of the carp. <u>Veterinary</u> <u>Medical Review</u>, No. 2, 165-171.
- Körting, W. (1975). Larval development of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> sp. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from carp (<u>Cyprinus carpio</u> L.) in Germany. <u>Journal of Fish Biology</u>, 7, 727-733.
- Liao, H.-L. & Shih, L.-C. (1956). Contribution to the biology and control of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis Yeh, a tapeworm parasite in the young grass carp (<u>Ctenopharyngodon</u> idellus C. and V.). <u>Acta Hydrobiologica Sinica</u>, **2**, 129-185.
- von Linstow, O.F. (1889). Compendium der Helminthologie. Nachtrag, Die Literatur der Jahre 1878-1889. xvi + 151 pp. Hanover.
- Megnin, P. (1883). Notes sur les helminthes rapportes des cotes de la Laponie par M. le professeur Pouchet. <u>Bulletin de la</u> <u>Societe Zoologique de France</u>, **8**, 153-156.
- Molnár, K. (1968). <u>Bothriocephalus phoxini</u> sp.n. (Cestoda, Pseudophyllidea) from <u>Phoxinus phoxinus</u> L. <u>Folia</u> <u>Parasitologica, Praha</u>, **15**, 83-86.
- Molnár, K. (1977). On the synonyms of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934. <u>Parasitologia Hungarica</u>, **10**, 61-62.

- Molnar, K. & Murai, E. (1973). Morphological studies on <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955 and <u>B. phoxini</u> Molnar, 1968 (Cestoda, Pseudophyllidea). <u>Parasitologica Hungarica</u>, 6, 99-108.
- Musselius, V.A. (1973). The parasites of grass-eating fish, and their diseases, in the Far-Eastern complex of fish farms in the USSR. <u>Trudy Vsesoyuznogo Nauchno-Issledovatel'skogo Instituta</u> <u>Prudnovogo Rybnogo Khozyaistva (Parazity i bolezni</u> <u>tastitel'noyadnykh ryb dal'nevostochnogo kompleksa v prudovyleh</u> <u>khozyaisivakh SSSR.)</u> 22, 4-129. (In Russian).
- Nakajima, K. & Egussa, S. (1974). <u>Bothriocephalus opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) found in the gut of cultured carp, <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> (Linne) - I. Morphology and taxonomy. <u>Fish Pathology</u>, 9,, 31-40. (In Japanese).
- Otte, E., Pfeiffer, H. & Supperer, R. (1972). Massenauftreten von Bothriocephalus acheilognathi in Teichkarpfen. <u>Wiener</u> <u>Tierarztliche Monatsschrift</u>, **59**, 174-175.
- Pool, D. (1984). A scanning electron microscope study of the cycle of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934. Journal of Fish Biology, 25, 361-364.
- Prigli, M. (1974). Uj adatok a <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>gowkongensis</u> terjedesehez. <u>Halaszat</u>, **20**, 180.
- Prigli, M. (1975). Uber die Rolle der Wasservogel bei der Verbreitung des <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis Yeh, 1955 (Cestoda). Parasitologia Hungarica, **8**, 61-62.

Protasova, E.N. (1977). Principles of cestodology, edited by K.M.

Ryzhikov. Volume VIII. Bothriocephalata - cestodes of fish. Izdatel'stuo "Nauka", 298 pp. (In Russian).

- Rudolphi, C.A. (1810). Entozoorum sive vermium intestinalium historia naturalis. II. Pars. 2, xii + 386 pp. Amstelaedami.
- Ryšavý, B. & Moravec, F. (1975). <u>Bothriocephalus aegyptiacus</u> sp. n. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from <u>Barbus bynni</u>, and its life cycle. <u>Vestnik Ceskoslovenske Spolecnosti Zoologicke</u> **39**, 68-72. Shinde, G.B. & Jadhav, B.V. (1977). Redescription of the <u>Bothriocephalus opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti (1934) from a marine

fish in India. <u>Marathwada University</u> Journal of Science, 16, 137-138.

- Stunkard, H.W. (1983). Evolution and Systematics. In Biology fo the Eucestoda (Edited by C. Arme and P.W. Pappas). pp. 1-25. Academic Press.
- Wardle, R.A. & McLeod, J.A. (1952). The zoology of tapeworms. XXIV 780 pp. The University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis.
- Yamaguti, S. (1934). Studies on the helminth fauna of Japan. Part4. Cestods of fishes. Japanese Journal of Zoology, 6, 1-112.

Yamaguti, S. (1952). Studies on the helminth fauna of Japan. Part

49. Cestodes of fishes, II. Acta Medicinae Okayama, 8, 1-76.

- Yamaguti, S. (1959). Systema Helminthum. Volume II. The cestodes of vertebrates. Interscience Publishers, Inc., New York and London, pp. 43-47.
- Yeh, L.S. (1955). On a new tapeworm <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis n. sp. (Cestoda: Bothriocephalidae) from freshwater fish in China. <u>Acta Zoologica Sinica</u>, 7, 69-74.

Zschokke, F. (1903). Die arktischen Cestoden. In Romer, F. and

Schaudinn, F. Fauna Arctica. Eine Zusammenstellung der arktischen Tierformen, mit besonderer Berucksichtigung des Spitzbergen-Gebietes auf Grund der Ergebnisse der Deutschen Expedition in das Nordliche Eismeer im Jahre 1898. V. 3, 1 lief, 1-32. Jena.

Chapter 2

The taxonomic status of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>aegyptiacus</u> Ryšavý and Moravec, 1975 and <u>B. kivuensis</u> Baer and Fain, 1958.

Introduction

The exportation of carp for food and sport, and grass carp for weed control has resulted in the rapid spread of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> throughout the world. The parasite was first recorded in South Africa (as <u>B. gowkongensis</u>) from <u>Barbus kimberleyensis</u> in 1978 (Brandt <u>et al.</u>, 1981) and has subsequently been recorded in <u>Cyprinus carpio</u>, <u>Barbus mattozzi</u>, and <u>B. trimaculatus</u> (Brandt <u>et al</u>. 1981; Van As <u>et al</u>., 1981). The route of entry of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> into South Africa is reported to be via infected <u>Ctenopharyngodon</u> <u>idella</u> imported into that country from West Germany in 1975 (Brandt <u>et al</u>., 1981).

In addition, two species of Bothriocephalus have been described only from African cyprinid freshwater fishes: B. kivuensis Baer and Fain, 1958 in Barbus altianilis altianilis from Lake Kivu and B. aegyptiacus Ryšavý and Moravec, 1975 in Barbus bynni from the River Nile. B. aegyptiacus is described as having a scolex resembling that of <u>B. ospariichthydis</u>, but could be distinguished from it by the larger number of testes per proglottid (140-200 as compared with 60-100), the larger strobila (502-611 x 3.8-4.3mm as compared with 100 x 1.25 mm) and the shape and location of the ovaries. The anatomy of the reproductive organs and scolex morphology is, however, similar to that of **B.** phoxini. It differs in having a larger strobila (502-611 x 3.8-4.3mm) as compared with 45 x 1.4mm), a greater number of testes (140-200 as compared with 60-70) and the larger diameter of the cirrus sac (0.13-0.156 mm as compared withAs <u>B. opsariichthydis</u> and <u>B. phoxini</u> are synonyms of <u>B.</u> 0.08mm). acheilognathi (see Chapter 1), B. aegyptiacus differs from B. acheilognathi only in the size of the strobila and the number of testes per proglottid.

<u>B. kivuensis</u> also has a scolex resembling that of <u>B.</u> <u>achielognathi</u>; however it differs in having a considerably larger strobila (7000-1000 x 25.4-4.0mm as compared with 80-100 x 1.25mm) and in possessing a vaginal sphincter muscle (Baer and Fain, 1958).

Molnár (1977) noted that there was considerable morphological variability in <u>B. acheilognathi</u> depending on the size and species of the fish definitive host. It is therefore possible that the three <u>Bothriocephalus</u> species recorded from cyprinid fishes in Africa are in fact the same species, with the observed morphological variation being a result of them infecting three different hosts. The purpose of this chapter is to investigate this suggestion by examining the morphological variability of <u>B. aegyptiacus</u> and <u>B. kivuensis</u> and comparing it with that of B. acheilognathi.

Method

Stained and mounted syntype and topotype specimens of <u>B.</u> <u>aegyptiacus</u> and syntype specimens of <u>B. kivuensis</u> were obtained from Dr. F. Moravec and Professor O.M. Amin, and from the Museum of Natural History of Geneva respectively. These specimens were examined using light microscopy, and the variation in the number and size of the internal organs was noted. Paratype material of <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> (as <u>B. gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955), obtained from the British Museum for Natural History, and specimens collected from <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> and <u>Cyprinus carpio</u>, and stained with Erlichs Haematoxylm, were examined in the same way for comparison.

The scolices of 6 immature <u>B. aegyptiacus</u> (paratype specimens provided by Dr. F. Moravec) and 2 immature <u>B. kivuensis</u> (syntype specimens provided by the Musée Royal de l'Afrique Centrale) were prepared for electron microscopy using the procedure described in Chapter 1, and examined using a Philips 501B scanning electron microscope. A comparison was made with the scolices of <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> presented in Chapter 1.

Results and Discussion

Considerable variation in the number and size of the anatomical and morphological structures of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>, <u>B. aegyptiacus</u> and <u>B. kivuensis</u> was evident from this study and has been described by various authors. This information is presented in table 1.

Amin (1978) and Rysavy and Moravec (1975) recorded 140-200 testes per proglottid for B. aegyptiacus. Examination of the material provided by Amin and Moravec revealed that in mature proglottides the testes were obscured by the numerous vitelline cells. However by examining proglottides in which the uterus did not contain eggs, it was possible to distinguish 145-215 vitelline cells (Fig. 1) in the cortical parenchyma around the margins of the proglottides, and 66-88 testes (Fig. 1) in a single lateral layer in the medullary parenchyma. The size of the testes (0.055-0.060mm x 0.080-0.095mm) compares favourably with that described for B. acheilognathi (as B. gowkongensis, Molnar and Murai, 1973). The measurements of the vitelline cells (0.015-0.03 x 0.035-0.045mm in immature proglotties and 0.03-0.05 x 0.04-0.055mm in mature proglottides) coincide with those given for the testes by Rysavy and Moravec (1975) (0.026-0.048 x 0.040-0.056mm) and Amin (1978) (0.013-0.048 x 0.022-0.070mm, Fig. 2). This together with similarity between the numbers of vitelline cells given here, and of the testes given by Amin, 1978 and Ryšavý and Moravec, 1975, suggests that these authors have confused the testes and vitelline cells.

In the descriptions of <u>B. aegyptiacus</u> by Ryšavý and Moravec (1975) and Amin (1978) and of <u>B. kivuensis</u> by Baer and Fain (1958) these species are distinguished from <u>B. acheilognathi</u> by the length of the strobila. When using the length of a cestode as a specific diagnostic feature it is necessary to consider the size and age of

Table 1: The principal characteristics of the 3 Bothriocephalus species recorded from Africa.

1

Species	Length mm	Width mm	Number of testes	Cirrus pouch mm	Eggs um	Authority
B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934	80 -40 600	·	80-100	0.16 x 0.08	51-54 x 33-37	Yamaguti, 1934 Granath & Esch, 1983 Könting (pags comm)
	-440	-2.6	44-86	0.13-0.16 x 0.09	50-54 x 33-36	Personal observations
(as <u>B. opsariichthydis</u>)	100	1.25	60-100	0.16 x 0.09	50-54 x 36-40	Yamaguti, 1934
(as <u>B.</u> gowkongensis)	35-80	0.5-1.2	50-90		53-54 x 33-38	Yeh, 1955
(as <u>B.</u> gowkongensis)	100-320	2 - 2.5	60-70	0.09-0.125	50-52 x 33-37	Molnar & Murai, 1973
(as <u>B. phoxini</u>)	45	1.4	40-60	0.08	49 - 54 x 35-40	Molnár & Murai, 1973
B. <u>aegyptiacus</u> Ryšavý and Moravec, 1973	502-611 161-611 40-100	3.8-4.3 2.10-4.30 0.8-1.5	140-200 140-280 66-88	0.13-0.156 0.098-0.156 0.09-0.132	66 x 34-46 38-55 x 26-46 50-55 x 35-42	Ryšavý & Moravec, 1975 Amin, 1978 Personal observations
<u>B. kivuensis</u> Baer and Fain, 1958	700-1000	2.5-4.0	50-75	0.16-0.183 x 0.078-0.091	45 - 50 x 27.30	Baer and Fain, 1958
	80-240	1.2-2.5	55-63	0.17-0.18 0.079-0.082	45-51 x 27.29	Personal observations



Figure 1.

Vitelline cells (V) and testes (T) within the proglottides of <u>B.</u> <u>aegyptiacus</u>.

Marker = 0.1mm

Size of testes, from Amin, 1978

Size of testes, from Ryšavý and Moravec, 1975.

Size of testes, from personal observations

Size of vitelline cells, from Rysavy and Moravec, 1975

Size of vitelline cells, from personal observations.



Figure 2.

A comparison of the measurements of testes and vitelline cells of <u>B. aegyptiacus</u> as described by Ryšavý and Moravec (1975), Amin (1978) and in this study.







the host (Davydov, 1978), the species of host (Read and Voge, 1954; Freze, 1977), the infection intensity (Pavlovski and Gnezdilov, 1949) and the state of contraction or relaxation of the parasite.

Variation in length related to the host species can be considerable, as illustrated by <u>Diphyllobothrium latum</u>, which grows to a maximum length of 8-11cm in the golden hamster, and 7-14 metres in the bear (Freze, 1977). Read and Voge (1954) suggested that variation such as this was related to the size of the host intestine.

A relationship between host size and species and parasite length has also been recorded for <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. Davydov (1978) noted that in underyearling <u>Cyprinus carpio</u>, <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (as <u>B.</u> <u>gowkongensis</u>) were 5-40mm in length; in yearling <u>C. carpio</u> they were 5-80mm and in two year old <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> they were 5-90mm. He further concluded that the host diet was 'not unimportant' in determining the length of the cestodes. Molnár and Murai (1973) also observed that <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (as <u>B. phoxini</u>) grew to a maximum length of 45mm in <u>Phoxinus phoxinus</u> and (as <u>B. gowkongensis</u>) to a length of 100-320mm in Cyprinus carpio.

Further evidence for such a relationship is presented in table 1: in <u>Gambusia affinis</u>, a small fish up to 60mm in length, <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> grows to a maximum length of 40mm (Granath and Esch, 1983), whereas in two year old carp (measuring 300-400mm) the worms were approximately 600mm in length (Körting, pers. comm.). It is important to note that Körting's specimens were measured immediately after removal from the intestine. Upon relaxation <u>B. acheilognathi</u> specimens have been observed to increase in length by a factor of 1.5-2.0 therefore the specimens may have measured 900-1200mm when

relaxed. The range in length of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> recorded from different hosts (40-1200mm) would encompass that described for <u>B.</u> <u>aegyptiacus</u> (161-611mm when relaxed) and <u>B. kivuensis</u> (700-1000mm when relaxed).

It appears then, that the length of a particular <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> specimen is dependent, in part, on the size and species of the fish host. The <u>B</u>. <u>aegyptiacus</u> specimens collected by Ryšavý and Moravec (1975) were from <u>Barbus bynni</u> measuring 320-380mm in length (Moravec, <u>pers. comm.</u>); and the <u>B</u>. <u>kivuensis</u> specimens described by Baer and Fain (1958) were from <u>Barbus altianilis</u> <u>altianilis</u> measuring 250-400mm in length (Fain, <u>pers. comm.</u>). Therefore, in both cases, the large size of the hosts could, in part, account for the large size of the <u>Bothriocephalus</u> species recorded from them.

In the original descriptions, the scolex of <u>B. kivuensis</u> is reported to be "of the same type as <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (Baer and Fain, 1958), while that of <u>B. aegyptiacus</u> resembles <u>B. opsariichthyclis</u> and <u>B. phoxini</u> (Ryšavý and Moravec, 1975). Examination of the scolices using the scanning electron microscope confirmed these statements. The scolex of <u>B. aegyptiacus</u> (Figs. 3a and b) resembles those of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> specimens relaxed in water at 10° C prior to fixation in a 10% formaldehyde solution (Figs. 8 and 12, Chapter 1). The scolex of <u>B. kivuensis</u> (Figs 4a and b) is consistent with <u>B. acheilognathi</u> specimens fixed <u>in situ</u> in the host intestine (Figs. 1 to 4, Chapter 1).

In his redescription of <u>B. aegyptiacus</u>, Amin (1978) describes the eggs as being oval and operculate, with a knob on the opposite side to the operculum. No such structure was apparent on the eggs contained within the uterus of mature proglottides. The eggs



а



b

Figure 3.

Scanning electron micrographs of the scolices of <u>B. aegyptiacus</u>

- a) Markers = 100um
- b) Markers = 76.9um





÷.

Figure 4.

Scanning electron micrographs of the scolices of

B. kivuensis

- a) Markers = 71.43um
- b) Markers = 100um

examined agreed with the description given by Ryšavý and Moravec (1975). Those described by Amin might have been dessicated during the fixation process, and therefore somewhat atypical.

Baer and Fain (1958) differentiated <u>B. kivuensis</u> from <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> by their overall size and the presence in <u>B. kivuensis</u> of a vaginal sphincter muscle. Previous authors have not described this muscle in <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. However, examination of longitudinal and transverse sections of the mature proglottides of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> stained with haematoxylin and eosin enabled the vaginal sphincter muscle to be seen (Fig. 5). The muscle was less obvious than in <u>B. kivuensis</u> on account of the smaller size of the worms examined.



Figure 5.

An optical microscope photograph of a transverse section through a mature proglottid of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> showing the cirrus sac and vaginal sphincter muscle.

Marker = 0.1mm

Conclusion

Since the characters examined in this study are not useful in differentiating the three <u>Bothriocephalus</u> species recorded from Africa, I am of the opinion that <u>B. acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934, <u>B.</u> <u>kivuensis</u> Baer and Fain, 1958 and <u>B. aegyptiacus</u> Ryšavý and Moravec, 1975 are synonymous. The name <u>B. acheilognathi</u> has priority. Further evidence, to clarify this situation could be obtained using isoenzyme analysis, or better, by cross-infection experiments.

References

- Amin, O.M. (1978). Intestinal helminths of some Nile fishes near Cairo, Egypt with redescriptions of <u>Camallanus kirandensis</u> Baylis, 1928 (Nematoda) and <u>Bothriocephalus aegyptiacus</u> Rysavy and Moravec, 1975 (Cestoda). Journal of Parasitology 64, 93-101.
- Baer, J.C. and Fain, A. (1957-58) <u>Bothriocephalus (Clestobothrium)</u> <u>kivuensis</u> n.sp., cestode parasite d'un barbeau du lac Kivu. Annales de la Societe Royale Zoologique de Belgique 88, 287-302.
- Brandt, F. de W., Van As, J.G., Schoonbee, H.J. and Hamilton-Atwell, U.L. (1981). The occurrence and treatment of Bothriocephalosis in the common carp, <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> in fish ponds with notes on its presence in the largemouth yellowfish <u>Barbus kimberleyensis</u> from the Vaal Dam, Transvaal. Water SA 7, 35-42.
- Davydov, O.N. (1978). Growth, development and fecundity of <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> (Yeh, 1955) a cyprinid parasite. Gidrobiological Zhurnal 14, (4), 70-77. Translation Hydrobiological Journal 14, (4), 60-66.
- Freze, V.I. (1977). [European <u>Diphyllobothrium</u>. (Experimental study of polymorphism)]. Trudy Gel'mintologicheskoi Laboratorii (Tsetody i trematody, morfologiya, sistematika i ekologiya), 27, 174-204. (In Russian)
- Granath, W.O.Jr. and Esch, G.W. (1983). Temperature and other factors in regulating infrapopulation densities and composition of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> in <u>Gambusia affinis</u>. Journal of Parasitology 69, (6), 1116-1124.
- Molnár, K. (1977). On the synonyms of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934. Parasitologia Hungarica 10, 61-62.

- Molnár, K. and Murai, E. (1973). Morphological studies on <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955 and <u>B. phoxini</u> Molnar, 1968 (Cestoda, Pseudophyllidea). Parasitologia Hungarica 6, 99-108.
- Pavlovski, E.N. and Gnezdilov, U.G. (1949). [The multiplicity factor in experimental infection with the broad tapeworm.] Doklodi Akademii Nauk SSSR, 67, (4), 759-761. (In Russian)
- Read, C.P. and Voge, M. (1954). The size attained by <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> in different host species. Journal of Parasitology 40, 88-89.
- Ryšavý, B. and Moravec, F. (1975). <u>Bothriocephalus aegyptiacus</u> sp.n. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from <u>Barbus bynni</u>, and its life cycle. Vestnik Ceskoslovenske Spolecnosti Zoologicke 39, (1), 68-72.
- Van As, J.G., Schoonbee, H.J. and Brandt, F. de W. (1981). Further records of the occurrence of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) in the Transvaal. South African Journal of Science 77, 343.

Yamaguti, S. (1934). Studies on the helminth fauna of Japan. Part
4. Cestodes of fishes. Japanese Journal of Zoology 6, 1-112.
Yeh, L.S. (1955). On a new tapeworm <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u>
n.sp. (Cestoda: Bothriocephalidae) from freshwater fish in

China. Acta Zoologica Sinica 7, 69-74.

Part II

An experimental study of some aspects of the biology of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> acheilognathi introduction

The influence of a range of biotic and abiotic factors on the biology of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> have been studied in detail (e.g. Liao and Shih, 1956; Körting, 1975; Nakajima and Egusa, 1976, 1977; Davydov, 1978; Granath and Esch, 1983). Although much of this work has centred around the effect of temperature on the various stages of the life cycle, in many instances the results were contradictory.

At the present time <u>B. acheilognathi</u> is not established in the British Isles, although it has been introduced on a number of occasions (Stott, 1977; Andrews <u>et al.</u>, 1981; Pool <u>et al.</u>, 1984). Two factors may be of particular importance in explaining this absence. Firstly, owing to the imposed movement restrictions and the careful anthelmintic treatment of infected fishes any <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> entering Britain are eliminated; and secondly, the climatic conditions (particularly the temperature) of the British Isles may not enable <u>B. acheilognathi</u> to become established or survive.

In Chapter 3 the influence of temperature on the life cycle of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> is examined. The aim of the study was to assess if <u>B. acheilognathi</u> could survive at the temperatures encountered in the British Isles, and how successfully it could complete its life cycle at these temperatures. The success of the parasite was examined by estimating the transmission dynamics at each stage of the life cycle.

While obtaining <u>B. acheilognathi</u> specimens for this study, and for the taxonomic work (Part I), it was noted that the position of the strobila within the intestine of the definitive host varied depending on the time of the day when the fish was sampled. In

addition it was noted that faecal samples collected at different times of the day contained varying numbers of eggs. In Chapter 4 this is studied in greater detail, and the factors responsible for the two observations are examined.

References.

- Andrews, C.; Chubb, J. C.; Coles, T.; Dearsley, A. (1981) The occurrence of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934 (<u>B. gowkongensis</u>) (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) in the British Isles. Journal of Fish Diseases 4, 89-93.
- Davydov, O. N. (1978) Growth, development and fecundity of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis (Yeh, 1955) a cyprinid parasite. Translation Hydrobiological Journal 14, 60-66.
- Granath, W. O. Jr. and Esch, G. W. (1983) Temperature and other factors in regulating infrapopulation densities and composition of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> in <u>Gambusia</u> <u>affinis</u>. Journal of Parasitology 69, 1116-1124.
- Körting, W. (1975) Larval development of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> sp. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from carp (<u>Cyprinus carpio</u> L.) in Germany. Journal of Fish Biology 7, 727-733.
- Liao, H.-H. and Shih, L.-C. (1956) Contribution to the biology and control of <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> Yeh, a tapeworm parasitic in the young grass carp (<u>Ctenopharyngodon idellus</u> C. and V.). Acta Hydrobiologica Sinica 2, 129-185. (In Chinese).
- Nakajima, K. and Egusa, S. (1976) <u>Bothriocephalus opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) found in the gut of cultured carp, <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> (Linne) - IV. Observations on the egg and coracidium. Fish Pathology 11, 17-22. (In Japanese).
- Nakajima, K. and Egusa, S. (1977) <u>Bothriocephalus opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) found in the gut of cultured carp, <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> (Linne). VI. Some

ecological changes of the adult worm overwintered within the host. Fish Pathology 12, 1-2. (In Japanese).

- Pool, D.; Ryder, K.; Andrews, C. (1984) The control of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> in grass carp <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> using praziquantel. Fisheries Management 15, 31-33.
- Stott, B. (1977) On the Question of the introduction of the grass carp (<u>Ctenopharyngodon</u> idella Val.) into the United Kingdom. Fisheries Management 8, 63-71.

Chapter 3

An experimental study of the population dynamics of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u>

Introduction

The population dynamics of cestodes in natural or experimental conditions are poorly understood. In field investigations many authors have reported the presence of seasonal fluctuations in abundance (reviewed by Chubb 1980, 1982), but few provide quantitative data on rates of transmission, infection or mortality. Those studies that have been conducted indicate that the rate of transmission from one stage of the life cycle to the next is very low, and the natural mortality rates throughout the life cycle are very high (e.g. Jarroll (1980) for <u>Bothriocephalus rarus</u>; Halvorsen and Andersen (1974) for <u>Diphyllobothrium ditremum</u> and Anderson (1974) for <u>Caryophyllaeus laticeps</u>).

Much of the experimental work has concentrated on the infection of the <u>Tribolium</u> intermediate host by the eggs of <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> (e.g. Anderson and Lethbridge, 1975; Keymer and Anderson, 1979; Keymer, 1980, 1982) and indicated that the rate of infectivity was age dependent, and proportional to the density of eggs and the feeding behaviour of the host. No studies appear to have been carried out upon the dynamics of transmission between other stages in the cestode life cycle, or at any stage in the life cycle of a pseudophyllidean cestode.

The life cycle of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> is typical of the Bothriocephalidae, and a number of studies have concentrated on all, or certain aspects of it (e.g. Liao and Shih, 1956; Pimenova, 1971, 1973; Körting, 1975; Hoffman, 1976 and Nakajima and Egusa, 1976). None of these studies have examined the population or transmission dynamics.

In the following chapter the population dynamics of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> were studied experimentally at a range of

temperatures. This provided information on a) if <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> could survive at the temperatures encountered in the British Isles, and (b) how successful it would be at these temperatures.

1) The fecundity of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>

Method

1-2cm <u>C. carpio</u> were infected with single specimens of <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u>. Infection was accomplished by placing a single <u>C.</u> <u>carpio</u> into a crystalising dish and adding one <u>Cyclops agilis</u> containing a single mature procercoid. The infected fish were maintained individually at 18° C in a 16L:8D photoperiod and fed daily on Mainstream Salmon Fry 02 crumb or Omega No. 4 trout pellets, depending on the size of the fish.

At approximately 100 day intervals the faeces from each fish were collected daily for a 5 day period. To facilitate the collection of faeces the aquaria were inclined at an angle of approximately 30° , allowing the faecal material to be removed using a siphon. Each sample was examined in the form of smears under the microscope and all of the eggs were counted. The dry weight of each faecal sample was measured by washing the faeces onto a predried and weighed filter paper and drying for 2-3 days at 60° C.
The data collected are illustrated in figure 1. Egg release was observed after the <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (specimens) had been in the <u>C. carpio</u> intestine for 200 days, and continued until day 600, the last sample before the worms passed out of the intestine. While examining the growth of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> it was noted that egg release first ocurred after 130 days (section 7). This information has been included in figure 1.

It is important to note that there was considerable variation in the numbers of eggs released by each worm at each sampling time, as indicated by the large standard error values. This variation can be partly explained by the small number of worms used in the study. Of the 10 <u>C. carpio</u> infected, only 4 contained worms after 200 days, 3 contained worms after 400 days and 2 contained worms after 600 days. The possible reasons for the gradual loss of worms are covered in section 7. Examination of the egg release by a single worm also showed considerable variation. This may be influenced by the activity of the fish, variations in the meal size consumed by the fish etc. Obviously further work to find the causes of variation is necessary.

Comparison of the faeces weight and the number of eggs released showed there to be no significant correlation (r = 0.1011, p > 0.2) indicating that the quantity of intestinal material passing over the worm did not influence the release of eggs. It was noted however, that a large proportion of the eggs counted, were associated with expelled intestinal mucosa.

Comparison of the daily values of egg release over the 400 day period using Kruskal-Wallis analysis indicated that there was no significant variation between the worms at each sampling time (p >



Figure 1: The egg release by <u>B. acheilognathi</u> from single worm infections in <u>C. carpio</u>. ($\overline{x} \pm SE$).

0.5 in each case) or between the samples (H(c) = 6.157, p > 0.5). Over this period the size of the <u>B. acheilognathi</u> showed no significant increase due to the rates of pseudopolysis and of proglottid formation and maturation being approximately equal (section 7). As the size (length or weight) of a cestode is reported to influence the rate of egg production (e.g. Davydov, 1978; Kennedy, 1983) the observed constant rate of egg release might be expected.

Few other studies have examined the pattern of egg release from cestodes. Davydov (1978) examined the rate of egg release by <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi in vitro</u> over a 12 day period. He found that an 80mm <u>B. acheilognathi</u> weighing 240mg and from a single infection produced 60,500 eggs over the 12 day period. Davydov's values are for a limited period of time under <u>in vitro</u> conditions, and so give no indication of the total egg output or the variation in egg release of a single worm as observed in this study.

In the present study it can be estimated (from Fig. 1) that a sing & <u>B. acheilognathi</u> from a single worm infection would produce 180,950 eggs (S.E. <u>+</u> 45,437) during its life span. This value is considerably less than the values obtained from cestodes with warm blooded hosts. For example <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u> produces 250,000 eggs per day (Keymer, 1980); <u>Taenia saginata</u> (<u>Taeniarhynchus saginatus</u>) produces 700,000 eggs per day; <u>T. solium</u> 300,000 and <u>T. hydatigena 60,000 (Moore 1981).</u>

As indicated by Kennedy (1983) the fecundity of a parasite is influenced by many factors (e.g. temperature, host immunity, host diet and genetic differences of the host). Therefore when comparing fecundity estimates it is important to note the precise conditions

in which the worms were maintained. The value for fecundity calculated here is only accurate for the experimental conditons used, and as such may vary considerably from the fecundity of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> in natural conditions. However the value does give an indication of the order of magnitude of egg release, and provides a starting point for the calculation of the population dynamics of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u>.

2) The effect of temperature on the hatching of eggs of <u>B.</u> acheilognathi

Method

Large numbers of eggs were obtained from 10 randomly selected gravid <u>B. acheilognathi</u> by placing the worms into distilled water at 18° C. Bacterial contamination of the egg cultures was reduced by washing the worms in distilled water immediately after removal from the intestine and by removing the worms from the egg cultures after 5 minutes. Approximately 100 eggs together with 5ml of distilled water were placed on a number of watch glasses and 10 watch glasses were incubated at 0, 4, 10, 16, 20, 25, 30, 35 and 40°C in a 16 hours light:8 hours dark photoperiod. The shallow layer of water over the eggs and the absence of bacterial contamination allowed sufficient oxygen to reach the eggs to prevent retardation of development (Dubinina 1966, Kuperman 1973).

The watch glasses were examined at 12 (30, 35 and 40° C), 24 (16, 20 and 25°C) or 48 hourly periods (0, 4 and 10° C), and the percentage of eggs hatching was noted. Each experiment was continued until all of the eggs had hatched, or the remaining eggs were obviously dead (indicated by the lack of organisation within the egg).

The data collected are summarised in figures 2a-d and Table 1, and clearly show that the incubation period and survival of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> eggs are temperature dependent. An increase in temperature (betwee 0 and 30° C) accelerates the rate of development and increases the percentage and rate of development of the coracidia.

The eggs of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> hatched at temperatures ranging from 4-35°C, taking 450-1686 hours (19-70 days) at 4⁰C, 301-1307 hours (12-54 days) at 10°C, 136-616 hours (6-26 days) at 16°C, 59-434 hours (2.5-18 days) at 20°C, 45-262 hours (2-11 days) at 25°C, 40-144 hours (1.6-6 days) at 30°C and 37-117 hours (1.5-4.9 days) at 35°C. These values agree closely with those obtained by previous authors (e.g. Granath and Esch, 1983b; Körting, 1975; Bauer <u>et al.</u> 1969). The range of temperature at which hatching occurred is however, greater than that recorded previously. Thus Liao and Shih (1956) observed little hatching below 12°C, and none above 37°C, whereas Nakajima and Egusa (1976) found no hatching below 15°C or above 37°C, with rapid death of the embryo from 2-7°C.

At the upper and lower temperature limits the percentage of eggs hatching was greatly reduced (Fig. 2a). At these extremes it was noted that most of the eggs developed to the embryonated stage before dying. In addition at temperatures of 0 and 40° C (at which no hatching occurred), many of the eggs underwent complete development before dying. Similar data at the upper temperature limits was obtained by Granath and Esch (1983b) for <u>B. acheilognathi</u> and at both temperature extremes for members of the Diphyllobothridae, Ligulidae (reviewed Dubinina, 1966) and Triaenophoridae (reviewed Kuperman, 1973). Dubinina (1966) further noted that exposing the eggs of <u>Schistocephalus</u> <u>solidus</u> to a

Table 1. The time taken in hours for the emergence of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> coracidia at different water temperatures (x + SE)

Developmental	Temperatures (^O C)								
stages	0	4	10	16	20	25	30	35	40
Emergence of coracidium	-	450 <u>+</u> 15.7	301 <u>+</u> 9.9	136 <u>+</u> 5.9	59.2 <u>+</u> 4.8	45.0 <u>+</u> 5.0	40.0 <u>+</u> 0	36.7 <u>+</u> 2.6	-
Emergence of 50% of coracidia	-	1296.4 <u>+</u> 233.0	633.3 <u>+</u> 31.4	284.5 <u>+</u> 9.7	114.8 <u>+</u> 4.3	77.5 <u>+</u> 7.2	49.4 <u>+</u> 4.2	65.5 <u>+</u> 3.1	-
Emergence of 100% of coracidia	-	1686.2 <u>+</u> 56.3	1307 <u>+</u> 27.7	616 <u>+</u> 31.4	433.8 <u>+</u> 14.8	262 <u>+</u> 9.7	144 <u>+</u> 11.5	117 _ <u>+</u> 0	-
% of coracidia emerging	-	9.7 <u>+</u> 1.6	24.7 <u>+</u> 4.3	63.9 <u>+</u> 13.1	77.2 <u>+</u> 5.99	92.1 <u>+</u> 4.8	96.2 <u>+</u> 1.3	61.4 <u>+</u> 2.7	-

-

.



Figure 2a: The effect of temperature on the percentage of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> eggs that hatch. $(\bar{x} + SE)$.

temperature of 43° C for up to 4 hours did not reduce their viability when the temperature was reduced, however hatching did not occur at this elevated temperature. Similar Zelazny (1979) found that the eggs of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> could be frozen at -4° C for up to 72 hours before killing the embryos. Therefore it would appear that the final stages of embryonic development or emergence from the egg are the most temperature sensitive, and as such restrict the range of temperatures over which complete development and hatching of the egg can occur.

It is interesting to compare the temperature optima, and temperature limits for normal embryonic development in B. acheilognathi with those for other members of the order Pseudophyllidea from freshwater fishes. The optimum temperature for embryonic development in <u>B. acheilognathi</u> is 30°C. At this temperature the eggs hatch in the minimum time with maximal survival. As indicated above the eggs hatch at temperatures ranging from 4-35°C. Normal development for members of the family Ligulidae takes place between 10 and 32° C, with the optimal temperatures for Ligula intestinalis being 23-25°C and Schistocephalus solidus being 18-20°C (reviewed Dubinina 1966) for members of the family Diphyllobothridae at 5-30°C, with the optimum temperature for <u>D</u>. latum being 18-20°C (reviewed Dubinina, 1966); and for the Triaenophoridae at $2-26^{\circ}C$ (Watson and Lawler, 1963), with the optimum temperature for Triaenophorus crossus being 17-20°C, T. nodulosusbeing 20°C and T. meridionalis 22-24°C (Kuperman, 1973). Therefore the eggs of B. acheilognathi have a higher optimum temperature and a greater temperature range than other pseudophyllideans.

In addition the embryonic development of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (Time taken for emergence of coracidia, Table 1) is more rapid than in other members of the order Pseudophyllidea reviewed by Dubinina (1966). This may reflect the adaptation of the parasites to the higher temperatures encountered in its area of origin (S. Asia). The tolerance of a wide range of temperatures may help to explain the success of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> in the temperate conditions of Europe and N. America.

The ability of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> eggs to survive at 0° C and hatch at 4° C suggests that development could occur throughout the winter in the British Isles. In addition preliminary experiments indicated that eggs held at 4° C for long periods (60-70 days) developed normally when raised to 18° C. This suggests that the life cycle of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> could overwinter in the egg phase. Similar retardation of development has been observed for members of the Ligulidae (Dubinina, 1966) and <u>Spirometra mansonoides</u> (Mueller, 1959), and has been used to store eggs for experimental work.

Over the range of temperatures at which normal embryonic development occurs (4-30°C) the time for 50 and 100 percent of the eggs to hatch is exponentially related to temperature (Fig. 2c and d). (Time for 50% of eggs to hatch: $\log_{10} Y = -0.05 \times +3.21$, $r^2 =$ 0.91 and Time for 100% of eggs to hatch: $\log_{10} Y = -0.04 \times +3.44$, r^2 = 0.99) where Y = time for 50/100% of eggs to hatch (hours) and x = temperature (°C). Previous authors have not described the relationship between egg hatching and temperature for other members of the Pseudophyllidea to enable comparisons to be made.

Examination of the effect of temperature on the time until the first emergence of coracidia (Fig. 2b) shows 2 distinct linear relationships. From 4-20 C an increase in temperature leads to a



Figure 2b: The effect of temperature on the time for the first <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> eggs to hatch. $(\bar{x} + SE)$.



Figure 2c: The effect of temperature on the time taken for 50% of the eggs to hatch. $(\bar{x} + SE)$.

.



Figure 2d: The effect of temperature on the time taken for 100% of the eggs to hatch. $(\overline{x} + SE)$.

large decrease in the time required for embryonic development (Y = -24.88 x +547.6, where Y = time until first emergence of coracidia, X = temperature between 4 and 20°C). Whereas from 20-35°C an increase in temperature results in a smaller, though still significant decrease in the time taken for the first emergence of coracidia (t between time taken for emergence of first coracidium at 20°C and 35°C = 4.447, 10 df. 0.002 > p < 0.001. Y = 1.45 x +85.1 where Y = time for emergence of first coracidium, X = temperature between 20 and 25°C). Therefore 20°C appears to be a critical temperature for the influence of temperature on the rate of embryonic development.

Guttowa (1958) observed a similar relationship between temperature and the eggs of <u>Triaenophorus lucii</u>, and concluded that there was a critical temperature (5° C) above which hatching of the eggs occurred normally.

Throughout these experiments very little variation was apparent in the time taken for the eggs to hatch. This is primarily a result of the time interval between observations. However large variation was observed while incubating eggs for other experiments. In one notable example the eggs hatched after only 2 hours at a temperature of 18° C. In this case the worm had been transferred from 10° C to 25° C prior to dissection, suggesting that the conditions encountered by the worm within the host may influence the degree of development of the egg while in the uterus. Kuperman (1973) cites a similar example in which the eggs of <u>T. crassus</u>, <u>T. amurensis</u> and <u>T. orientalis</u> from pike, hatched 3 hours after removal from the worm. Kuperman also observed that this occurred after a rise in temperature. This variation in the time for embryonic development is dependent on the degree of development within the uterus which

is, in turn influenced by the temperature, and was noted by Liao and Shih (1956) who observed that, of the eggs released at $24-29^{\circ}$ C, 89% were fully embryonated, whereas at $14-21^{\circ}$ C only 2% were embryonated.

3) Effect of temperature and age of the coracidium on coracidium survival and infectivity

Method

<u>B. acheilognathi</u> eggs were incubated at 10, 14, 18, 25 and 30° C until the coracidia started to emerge. The water was then replaced and any coracidia emerging in the following 30 minutes were collected. At each temperature, groups of 10 coracidia were aged for periods ranging from 1 to 14 hours.

Uninfected <u>Cyclops agilis</u> (s.str) aged 1-2 days were used in the infection experiments since these were found to be more susceptible to infection that older specimens and other species.

Ten replicates were conducted at each temperature and for each age group of coracidia. Each experiment involved placing an acclimated <u>C. agilis</u> into 10 drops of dechlorinated tapwater and adding a group of 10 coracidia of the same age for a 60 minute incubation period. The number of coracidia consumed was noted and after 24 hours the number of procercoids present in each copepod was recorded as a percentage of those consumed.

The survival of coracidia at 18° C was recorded at 2 hourly intervals until they were all dead.

The survival of coracidia at 18° C is shown in figure 3a. The coracidia survived for a maximum of 30 hours, although some individuals died immediately after hatching. Anderson and Whitfield (1974) observed a similar pattern of survival for the cercariae of <u>Transversometra patialense</u> and concluded that it was a result of age dependent mortality, caused by the progressive utilisation of the non-replaceable food reserves. Their conclusions may also explain the observed age dependant mortality of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. The gradual absorbtion of water by the coracidium (Pool, 1984; Dubinina, 1966) may also contribute to the age dependent mortality.

The duration of the life of the coracidia of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> is also temperature dependent (Fig. 3b). The relationship being linear and represented by the equation $Y = -1.45 \times +53.1 (r^2 = 0.98)$ (where Y = time in hours and x = temperature, ^OC). Coracidia have no mechanism for absorbing external nutrition, and their energy is obtained from reserves of fat and glycogen stored in the form of granules within the embryonic envelope (Dubinina 1966). The rate of utilisation of these substances will depend on the metabolic rate, which in turn is related to the temperature. Therefore at higher temperatures the energy reserves will be exhausted more rapidly, resulting in the coracidium having a shorter lifespan (Dubinina, 1966; Kuperman, 1973; Grabiec et al., 1962, 1965).

Similar temperature dependent mortality has been described, for example, for the coracidia of <u>Diphyllobothrium latum</u> (Neuymin, 1953) and members of the family Ligulidae (reviewed Dubinina, 1966) and Triaenophoridae (reviewed Kuperman, 1973), together with the miracidia of <u>Schistosomatum douthitti</u> (Farley, 1962) and the



Figure 3a: The survival of the coracidia of <u>E.</u> acheilognathi maintained at 18 °C.



Figure 3b: The effect of temperature on the longevity and time when the coracidia of <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> were infective. ($\bar{x} \pm SE$)

Longevity: Y = -1.45X + 53.1 $r^2 = 0.98$ Infectivity: Y = -0.42X + 17.0 $r^2 = 0.93$

•

••

cercariae of <u>Transversotrema</u> <u>patialense</u> (Anderson and Whitfield, 1974) and Orientobilharzia datlai (Dutt and Srivasta, 1962).

At a temperature of 4° C and 35° C hatching of the eggs occurred, (see section 2), but the numbers of coracidia emerging and surviving was too low to enable them to be included in the study. The coracidia at 4° C showed very litle activity, but did undergo the same degeneration observed at higher temperatures. They were active for approximately 48 hours. Granath and Esch (1983b) obtained coracidia at 35° C, however they observed that the peak incidence of motile coracidia was lower than at 30, 25 and 20° C.

It is interesting to compare the life span of the coracidia of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (Fig. 3a) with those of other pseudophyllidean cestodes. <u>Schistocephalus solidus</u> coracidia survive for 96-120 hours at 5-8°C, 48 hrs at 1-18°C and less than 24 hours at 22-25°C; <u>Ligula intestinalis</u> coracidia survive for 24-36 hours at 24-28°C, and less than 4 hours at 35° C (reviewed Dubinina, 1966) whereas the coracidia of <u>Triaenophorus nodulosus</u> survive for 240 hours at 5-7°C, 24-72 hours at 18-20°C and 1 hour at 29°C (Kuperman, 1973). In general therefore, the coracidia of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> survive for a longer period of time at a given temperature than those of other pseudophyllidean cestodes.

The infectivity of the coracidia was found to be age and temperature dependant (Fig. 3b and c). As infection is an active response requiring the production of a glandular secretion and penetration of the copepod intestine (Dubinina, 1966), it will be less efficient in older coracidia due to diminishing energy reserves. The coracidia are not infective throughout their life span, suggesting that the older specimens have not got sufficient



Figure 3c: The effect of temperature and age on the infectivity of the coracidia of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>.

energy reserves to enable infection of the copepod to occur. Observation of the coracidia suggested that they were not infective after they had stopped actively swimming and dropped to the bottom of the dish. A similar relationship was thought to be responsible for the decreased infectivity of older cercaria of <u>Transversotrema</u> patialense (Anderson and Whitfield, 1975).

The time taken for the coracidia to reach this uninfective stage decreased linearly with temperature (Fig. 3b) and was described by the equation $Y = -0.42 \times 17.0$, $r^2 = 0.93$ (where Y = the time when the coracidium is infective in hours and X = temperature (°C)). The decreased infective period at higher temperatures can be explained by the increased role of utilisation of the energy reserves (Anderson and Whitfield, 1975).

Comparison of the infectivity of 0-1 hour old coracidia at the temperatures tested using Kruskal-Wallis analysis showed there to be no significant difference (H = 3.16, p > 0.05), suggesting that the coracidia emerging at different temperatures had the same energy reserves initially.

It is interesting to note that the number of coracidia consumed by the copepods varied with the age of the coracidia. Young coracidia (0-1 hours old) were eaten less frequently than innactive, old coracidia. This may have been a result of the older coracidia sinking to the bottom of the infection chamber, and so coming into contact with the copepods more frequently. In natural conditions the active swimming and positive phototaxic response of the young coracidia would cause them to rise to the surface of the water body, and into the area frequented by the copepods (Dubinina, 1966).

The infestation levels achieved in this study are unlikely to be reached in natural water bodies. Liao and Shih (1956) conducted

a detailed survey of the copepod fauna of fish rearing ponds along the Pearl River, China and found the maximum rate of infection be to

7%. Similar studies have found very low levels of infection of copepods by the coracidia of other Pseudophyllidea (e.g. Guttowa, 1963, Dubinina, 1966). Indeed in his accurate study of the population dynamics of <u>B. rarus</u> Jarroll (1980) estimated that only 0.8% of the copepods in an artificial pond were infected.

4) Effect of the age of the coracidium when consumed on the subsequent development of the procercoid.

Method

<u>C. agilis</u> were infected with 1-6 hour old coracidia using the procedure outlined in section 3. 10 copepods containing single procercoids were used for each experiment. The copepods were maintained individually, and fed daily on one drop of mature hay infusion. The procercoids were examined daily, and the stage of development was described using the following easily distinguishable stages.

Stage	1	0	
	2	\bigcirc	
	3	\bigcirc	
	4	\bigcirc	
	5	\bigotimes	Mature

The results presented in figure 4a and b indicate that the age of the coracidium when consumed by <u>Cyclops agilis</u> affects the subsequent development of the procerocid. Comparison of the time taken for the procercoid to reach maturity using a Newman-Kuels multiple range test showed there to be no significant difference between procercoids originating from 1 and 2 hour old coracidia (1hr vs 2hr q = 2.38 p > 0.05) but a significant difference between those originating from 3, 4 and 6 hour old coracidia (2hr vs 3hr q = 6.89 p < 0.001; 2hrs vs 4hrs, q = 4.596, 0.005 > p > 0.001; 4hrs vs 6hrs q = 5.64 p < 0.001). The data followed a linear relationship (Fig. 4a), which can be described by the equation Y = 2.88x + 13.79 r² = 0.81 (where Y = Age of procercoid when mature (days), X = age of coracidia when consumed in hours) and shows that procercoids originating from younger coracidia require a shorter period of time to develop to maturity (other things being equal).

In section 3 it was suggested that the coracidia have a finite energy supply which is utilised in swimming and infection of the copepod host (Dubinina, 1966; Kuperman, 1973). Therefore there appears to be a correlation between the age of the coracidium, its energy reserves, and the time taken for the resultant procercoid to develop to maturity.

The initial stages of development within the copepod haemocoel involves the development of the microvilli (Dubinina, 1966; Kuperman, 1973) enabling the procercoid to absorb nutrients. This is presumably an energy dependant process, and as such will be completed more rapidly by coracidia with abundant energy reserves. Therefore growth of procercoids originating from young coracidia would commence before those originating from old coracidia. In



Figure 4a: The effect of coracidium age when consumed by <u>C. agilis</u> on the time taken for the procercoid to reach maturity. $(\bar{x} \pm SE)$



Figure 4b: The effect of coracidium age on subsequent procercoid development. (Error bars omitted for clarity).

addition Dubinina (1966) observed that the copepod host can show a protective reaction to the penetration of the onchosphere. The severity of this reaction was shown to vary depending on the condition of the host and the viability of the onchosphere. In terms of the present study the young onchospheres would be more viable than those originating from old coracidia, and so would be better able to withstand the host reaction resulting in a more rapid initial growth rate.

Comparison of the stage of development 3 days after entry into the copepod (Fig. 4b) using Newman-Kuels analysis indicates that the procercoids originating from 1, 2, 3 and 4 hour old coracidia differ significantly (p < 0.05) whereas those from 4 and 6 hour old coracidia do not (p > 0.1). Therefore it appears that procercoids from young coracidia develop more rapidly.

This variation in initial development has no significant effect on the overall development of the procercoids, as indicated by the length of the mature procercoids (mean length of those originating from 1 hour old coracidia = 0.17mm, SE = 0.007; 2 hour old coracidia x = 0.18mm, SE = 0.008; 3 hour old coracidia x = 0.18mm, SE = 0.006; 4 hour old coracidia x = 0.17mm, SE = 0.005; 6 hour old coracidia x= 0.16mm, SE = 0.003. Mann-Whitney test between lengths of coracidia originating from 2 and 6 hour old coracidia (greatest difference), $U_1 = 72$ $n_1 = 10$, $n_2 = 10$, 0.2 > p > 0.1).

The rates of development of the procercoids of <u>Eubothrium</u> <u>Salvelini</u> and <u>Spirometra mansonoides</u> were studied by Boyce (1974) and Mueller (1959) respectively. They noted that the procercoids developed at different rates under identical conditions of temperature, time, intensity of infection and host species.

Although this variation was attributed to intrinsic differences among individual metacestodes, it may also have resulted from the procercoids originating from coracidia of different ages.

5) The effect of temperature and age of the procercoid on establishment within a C. carpio definitive host

Methods

The experiment was conducted at 4, 10, 14, 18, 25, 30 and 35° C. Eggs were hatched at each temperature, and 1-2 day old <u>C. agilis</u> were infected with 0-1 hour old coracidia. 10 copepods containing single procercoids were fed to each of 10 uninfected 2.5cm <u>C.</u> <u>carpio</u>.

Infection of the fish was accomplished by placing a single <u>C</u>. <u>carpio</u> and 10 infected <u>C</u>. <u>agilis</u> into a 300ml crystalising dish. The dish was placed on a black surface to make the copepods conspicuous. Consumption of the copepods usually occurred within 2 hours. Fish which had not consumed all of the copepods within 6 hours were not included in the experiments.

Preliminary experiments indicated that the procercoids were unable to establish in the <u>C. carpio</u> intestine prior to development of the cercomer and bothria. The procercoids were therefore examined at daily intervals until development of the cercomer was evident they were then fed to the <u>C. carpio</u> at 5 day intervals (10 and 14° C) or 2 day intervals (18, 25 and 30° C).

24 hours after infection the <u>C. carpio</u> were sacrificed and the number of plerocercoids within the intestine was recorded.

Temperature has a pronounced effect on procercoid development, with an increase in temperature (within the range $10-30^{\circ}C$) resulting in an exponential decrease in the time taken to become infective, the total time when the procercoid was infective and the maximum infectivity (Fig. 5a, b and c).

The relationship between temperature and the time taken for the procercoid to become infective can be described by the equation $\log_{10} Y = 0.064 x + 3.98$, $r^2 = 0.95$ (where Y = time taken for the procercoid to become infective in hours and x = temperature in ^oC). Previous authors have not established a precise relationship, but have given developmental times at a range of temperatures. Thus Liao and Shih (1956) noted that the procercoids of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> became mature in 4 days at 25-33°C, 5 days at 20.3°C and 21 days at 13.8°C; whereas Bauer et al. (1969) found that the procercoid became infective after 10-12 days at $16-19^{\circ}$ C, 5-7 days at $22-25^{\circ}$ C and 4 days $25-30^{\circ}$ C. For comparison the present study found that at 10° C the procercoids were infective after 110 days, at 14° C after 60 days, at 18°C after 17 days, at 25°C after 12 days and at 30°C after 5 days. Therefore in the present study the procercoids required a longer period of time to reach maturity. The different size of the copepod intermediate host used by the various authors may account for the observed variation in the rate of development (Dubinina, 1966).

Development of the procercoid to an infective stage was only observed over the temperature range $10-30^{\circ}$ C. At 4° C no development of the procercoid was observed despite incubation of the infected copepod of up to 80 days. Above 30° C procercoid development occurred rapidly, but the infected <u>C. agilis</u> died before the







Figure 5b: The effect on temperature on the total time when the procercoids were infective. $(\bar{x} \pm SE)$



Figure 5c: The effect of temperature on the maximum infectivity of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> procercoids. $(\bar{x} \pm SE)$

procercoid reached maturity. Liao and Shih (1956) observed procercoid development at 8 and 33° C although they do not indicate if they became infective. Granath and Esch (1983a and b) observed the recruitment of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> at temperatures up to 40° C, however their experiments were conducted in natural conditions which would be subject to intermittent and diurnal fluctuations in temperature. Therefore establishment and/or development of the procercoid may have occurred at temperatures considerably lower than 40° C.

Data concerning the development times for the procercoids of other pseudophyllideans is sparse. However, that provided in the reviews of Dubinina (1966) and Kuperman (1973) show that the time taken for development to maturity is similar to that of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> over the range of temperatures examined. No data is available for development times at temperatures greater than 22° C. <u>Triaenophorous nodulosus</u> procercoids have a lower thermal limit than <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> and can develop to maturity at 4° C (taking over 30 days) (Kuperman, 1973).

The total time when the procercoids were infective was also exponentially related to temperature (Fig. 5b) being described by the equation $\log_{10} Y = -0.03 \times +3.28$, $r^2 = 0.99$ (where Y = time when procercoid was infective in hours, and x = temperature in ^oC). Death of the procercoid was usually associated with the death of its <u>C. agilis</u> host, although in a number of cases dead or dying copepods were found containing active procercoids suggesting that it is the death of the host which is limiting the procercoid lifespan (Kuperman, 1973). There is considerable disagreement regarding the effect that procercoids have on their copepod intermediate hosts.

Kuperman (1973), Michajlow (1953) and Watson and Price (1960) suggested that the procercoids have no effect on the copepod, whereas Amman (1955) and Dubinina (1966) believed that there was a direct or indirect relationship between the level of infestation of the copepod and its survival and longevity. These observations were made on densely infected copepods. It is unlikely that the single procercoid infections used here will have a great effect on copepod longevity. Instead the observed results may reflect the effect of temperature on the life span of the intermediate host.

The procercoids were first able to establish in the fish intestine upon development of the bothria. As the bothria developed the procercoids were better able to establish until a maximal level was attained after which the percentage establishment remained similar until the death of the procercoid (Fig. 5d). Associated with the development of the bothria was the presence of calcareous granules within the procercoid. The function of these granules is unknown, although Dubinina (1966) believed them to be involved in the establishment of the procercoid within the intestine of the fish host by preventing the action of the digestive enzymes.

Comparison of the maximal level of establishment at the range of temperatures examined shows there to be an exponential relationship, with the procercoids having a higher maximum establishment at higher temperature. This relationship can be expressed in the formula $\log_{10}Y - 0.025 \times \pm 1.02$, $r^2 = 0.97$ (where Y = maximum percentage establishment of procercoids and X = temperature in °C) (see Fig. 5c). This is presumably due to the increased activity of the procercoids at the higher temperatures, resulting in a higher probability of them coming into contact with, and attaching to the villi within the intestine.
Halvorsen (1966) noted that for <u>Diphyllobothrium norvegicum</u> (=<u>D. dendriticum</u>) the average size of the procercoids was smaller at the lower temperatures tested. This, he sugested was a result of the unfavourable conditions, and mirrored the situation in densely infected copepods. In the present study it is suggested that procercoid density, size and infectivity are associated (section 6). In the case of temperature, the size of 10 procercoids from 30°C and 10°C was 0.21 (SE = 0.01) and 0.15 (SE = 0.008) respectively. Comparison of these means using a Mann-Whitney U test showed them to differ significantly (U₁ = 91, U₂ = 9, N₁ and N₂ = 10 0.002 > p > 0.001) suggesting that the size of the procercoids at different temperatues may be responsible for the observed temperature dependent establishment.

Previous work on parasite establishment has shown it to be temperature independent e.g. <u>Pomphorhynchus laevis</u> (Brown, 1984) or reduced at raised temperatures, e.g. <u>Caryophyllaeus laticeps</u> (Kennedy and Walker, 1969) and <u>Echinorhynchus truttae</u> (Awachie 1963). Anderson (1976) found that at raised temperatures greater establishment of <u>C. laticeps</u> occurred due to the increased feeding rate of the host. In the case of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> the increased percentage establishment of the procercoid together with the increased feeding rate at higher temperatures would result in a great increase in the numbers of parasites entering the intestine at raised temperatures in a natural situation.

6) The relationship between the density of the procercoids and establishment in a Cyprinus carpio definitive host

Methods

Approximately 10 0.1 hour old coracidia were fed to 1-2 day old <u>Cyclops agilis</u> at a temperature of 18° C. After approximately 10 days the copepods were examined and divided according to the numbers of procercoids within them.

Upon development of the bothria, the copepods were fed to 2.5cm <u>C. carpio</u> (see section 5). Approximately 10 procercoids from equally infected copepods were fed to each of 10 replicates i.e. 10 <u>C. agilis</u> containing 1 procercoid each (=10x1), 5x2, 3x3, 2x4, 2x5, 2x6, 1x7, 1x8, 1x9 or 1x10 procercoids. A constant meal size of 10 copepods was given to each fish by the addition of uninfected copepods.

The fish were dissected 24 hours after infection, and the percentage of plerocercoids which established was calculated.

Results

The percentage establishment of the procercoids of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> in the <u>C</u>. <u>carpio</u> definitive host decreases exponentially as the number of procercoids per copepod increases (Fig. 6a) and is described by the equation $\log_{10} Y = 0.15x + 2.05$, r^2 = 0.95 (where Y = % establishment and X = number of procercoids per copepod). Several factors may be responsible for this observation.

Within the <u>C. carpio</u> intestine the procercoids are released from the copepod host by means of the mechanical action of the pharangeal teeth and the digestive enzymes of the host (Anderson, 1976, Dubinina, 1966). It might be speculated that a greater proportion of the procercoids from a densely infected copepod would be damaged by the mechanical action of the pharangeal teeth, resulting in fewer procercoids establishing.

In addition, several authors have reported that the procercoids from singly infected copepods were larger than those from multiple infections (e.g. Dubinina, 1966; Kuperman, 1973; Halvorsen, 1966). In the present study this was also found to be so, with a linear decline in procercoid length as procercoid density increased (Fig. 6b). This can be represented by the equation $Y = -0.006 \times +0.191 r^2$ = 0.84 (where Y = Procercoid length in mm and X = the number of procercoids per copepod.

The size of the procercoid may influence its ability to establish in two ways. Firstly the larger procercoids will have larger bothria, enabling them to grasp the intestinal villi more easily (see section 8). Secondly, the size of a procercoid may influence its energy reserves. Large procercoids might have greater energy reserves, and therefore be better able to move against the



Figure 6a: The effect of procercoid density on the establishment of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> procercoids in a <u>C. carpio</u> definitive host. ($\bar{x} \pm SE$)



Figure 6b: The effect of procercoid density on the length of the procercoids of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> in a <u>C. agilis</u> intermediate host. $(\bar{x} + SE)$

Y = -0.005X + 0.191 $r^2 = 0.84$

peristaltic flow of the intestinal material, and come into contact with the intestine wall. Dubinina (1966) disagrees with the idea of size dependent establishment, indicating that different sized procercoids are all equally infective.

Several authors have observed that in densely infected copepods the rate of development varied considerably (Dubinina, 1966; Kuperman, 1973; Michajlow, 1953; Körting, 1975) this being reflected in the time taken for the procercoid to reach the infective stage. Indeed Kuperman (1973) noted that when 5 or more procercoids were present in a single copepod density dependent effects became apparent. In the densely infected copepods used in this experiment the procercoids may not have been equally infective, resulting in the reduced establishment. This effect was minimised by careful observation of the infected copepods to ensure all of the procercoids were at an infective stage before feeding to the definitive host. However, at increased procercoid densities it was more difficult to see all of the procercoids therefore errors might have occurred.

In natural conditions the number of copepods will be considerably lower than in the present study. The maximum infestation levels of <u>Triaenophorous nodulosus</u> were found to be 1-3 procercoids per copepod in Heming Lake (Watson and Lawler, 1965) therefore the density dependent effects noted here, and by Kuperman (1973) and Dubinina (1966) are unlikely to be apparent.

7) The effect of temperature on the development and growth of the plerocercoid and adult stages.

Method

1-2 day old <u>Cyclops agilis</u> were fed 5 0.1 hour old coracidia at 18° C (see section 3). 48 hours after infection the copepods were examined, and those containing one procercoid were transferred at the rate of 2°C per day to be incubated at 10, 14, 18, 25 and 30°C. When infective a single procercoid was fed to a naive 2.0-2.5cm <u>C.</u> <u>carpio</u>. Single worm infections were used to minimise the pathological effects on the fish (Par, 1978) and remove the effects of intraspecific competition (Granath and Esch 1983a and b; Read, 1951; Roberts, 1961 etc.)

Infected <u>C. carpio</u> were maintained at the appropriate temperature of infection, and fed daily on Mainstream Salmon Fry 02 crumb or Omega No. 4 trout pellets (depending on their size). Regular feeding was important to prevent potential destrobilation (Thomas, 1937) or a reduction in the growth rate of the worms due to starvation (Davydov, 1978).

<u>C. carpio</u> were sacrificed at a range of times after infection and the following information was collected from any <u>B.</u> acheilognathi recovered.

- Percentage position of scolex in intestine (0% = mouth and 100% = anus).
- 2) Length after relaxation in water until dead.
- 3) Total number of segments.
- 5) Number of mature proglottides. (As indicated by the presence of eggs in the uterus).
- 6) Number of eggs released when relaxed in distilled water.

7) Dry weight.

For comparison <u>C. carpio</u> infected with single <u>B. acheilognathi</u> were maintained at ambient temperature from July 1st 1984 until 3rd June, 1985. Samples were taken at approximately 50 day intervals and the information described above was obtained.

Results

The data collected is presented in figures 7a-d. To avoid overlap and confusion the error bars have been omitted.

The survival of the parasites within the host intestine is shown in Fig. 7a. At temperatures of 18, 25 and 30°C there was a gradual decline with time in the number of fish infected indicating that the parasites were progressively passing out of the intestine. The rate at which this occurred was related to the temperature, being faster at higher temperatures.

A similar increased loss of cestodes at higher temperatures has been observed by many authors (e.g. Chubb 1980, 1982; Kennedy, 1969, 1971; Hopkins 1980; Andreassen and Hopkins, 1980; Awachie 1963) and has been explained in terms of the reduced availability of nutrients or the increased peristaltic action of the intestine (Awachie, 1963), a temperature dependent immune response by the fish (Hopkins, 1980; Andreassen and Hopkins, 1980), an alteration in the physiological condition of the host (Aho and Kennedy, 1984) or due to some other temperature dependent rejection response (Kennedy, 1969).

The experimental evidence provided in this study is not suficient to identify the mechanism by which the worms are lost

Granath and Esch (1983a and b) noted a similar decline in the density of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> as the water temperature increased, in a thermally altered reservoir (Belews Lake) in North Carolina (U.S.A.). However they worked with multiple infections and concluded that intraspecific exploitative competition was responsible. In the present study no competitive effects were observed due to the use of single worm infections.



Figure 7a: The effect of temperature on the survival of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> in a <u>C</u>. <u>carpio</u> definitive host.

The maximum longevity of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> was inversely related to the temperature. Thus at 18° C the worms survived for a maximum of 670 days, at 25°C for 300 days and at 30°C for 100 days. The longevity of the worms was influenced by the temperature related loss of worms from the intestine mentioned previously, and directly by their increased metabolism and rate of development causing the more rapid completion of the life cycle (Strazhnik and Davydov, 1975).

The longevity values given here differ from those provided by other authors. Bauer <u>et al</u>. (1969) suggested that <u>B. acheilognathi</u> survived for approximately 1 year, although they do not give a temperature at which this occurred.

Chubb (1981) noted that in indoor aquaria at temperatures ranging from 8-27°C <u>B. acheilognathi</u> survived for at least 2.5 years. This long survival time is probably a result of the retarded growth and development that occurs at low temperatures (see later in this section).

The growth rate of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> at different temperatures can be compared by examining the increased length (Fig. 7b), weight (Fig. 7c) or number of segments (Fig. 7d). At each temperature and using each parameter the 3 phases of development described by Liao and Shih (1956), namely establishment, rapid growth and egg production, can be clearly seen.

When egg production commences (after 130 days at 18° C and 100 days at 25° C) the rate at which the parasites increase in size decreases (although there is still a significant variation at the 5% level shown by the use of Kruskal-Wallis analysis). Examination of the faeces of <u>C. carpio</u> containing mature worms showed that mature proglottides were shed by the worms (pseudopolysis) (see chapter 4).



Figure 7b: The increase in length of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> within a <u>C.</u> <u>carpio</u> definitive host at a range of temperatures.



Figure 7c: The increase in dry weight of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> within a <u>C. carpio</u> definitive host at a range of temperatures.



Figure 7d: The increase in the number of segments of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> within a <u>C. carpio</u> definitive host at a range of temperatures.

In order for the worms to remain approximately the same size the rate of pseudopolysis must approximate to the rate at which new segments were formed, and as such, it closely follows the pattern observed in the Cyclophyllidea (Kennedy, 1983), <u>Diphyllobothrium</u> <u>latum</u> (<u>Wardle and McLeod</u>, 1952) and <u>Eubothrium</u> <u>salvelini</u> (Boyce, 1974; Smith, 1973).

At 30° C <u>B. acheilognathi</u> shows an abnormal development pattern. In days 1-80 the rate of growth of individual parasites varied greatly, with some developing to maturity, whereas others clearly showed a retardation in growth. After 80 days an increasing proportion of the worms showed signs of retarded growth and degeneration (destrobilation) and after 100 days all of the parasites had passed out of the intestine. The possible reasons for the loss of worms were covered earlier in this section. It is interesting to note that Bauer <u>et al</u>. (1969) provide no information for the time taken for <u>B. acheilognathi</u> to reach maturity at 30° C, suggesting that in their studies the worms did not reach maturity. Granath and Esch (1983b) also reported that the lowest densities and prevalence of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> were recorded when the water temperature was highest, i.e. between 30 and 40° C.

At temperatures ranging from 18 to 30° C, the time taken for the plerocercoid to develop into a mature adult (producing eggs) is inversely related to temperature. Several authors have provided similar information. Although they find a similar inverse relationship, the times quoted are considerably shorter than in the present study (120 days at 18°C, 100 days at 25°C and 80 days at 30° C). Thus Bauer <u>et al</u>. (1969) observed that <u>B. acheilognathi</u> was mature after 20-21 days within the fish host at 19°C and 12-14 days

at 25°C, whereas Davydov (1978) found it took 22-25 days at 15-18°C and 12-14 days at 22-25°C. This discrepancy may result from these authors describing 'maturity' as the presence of proglottides, as opposed to the presence of eggs within the proglottides.

At 10° C there was no significant loss or growth (Mann-Whitney U analysis U = 47 p < 0.05) of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> over the 300 day experimental period. When a sample of infected fish maintained at 10° C for 300 days were transferred to 18° C, growth of the worms resumed and 120 days later they produced viable eggs. Therefore it appears that at 10° C development and growth was suspended, but that this did not affect subsequent development when the temperature was increased. This behaviour would obviously be advantageous in a temperate climate, where it would allow the worms to overwinter.

Statistical examination of the percentage position of attachment of the scolex of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> in the intestine of <u>C.</u> <u>carpio</u> shows there to be no significant variation at the 5% level at different temperatures, or with different aged parasites (using Kruskal-Wallis test). This suggests that this site (11-14%) of the distance along the intestine) is optimal for the uptake of nutrients by the worm (Crompton, 1973). A more detailed examination of the site occupied by adult <u>B. acheilognathi</u> is provided in chapter 4.

The growth of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> specimens maintained at ambient temperatures is illustrated in table 2. Throughout the experimental period there was no significant loss of the worms ($X^2 = 4.22$ df = 5 0.5 > p > 0.2). This differs considerably from the pattern of survival of the parasites maintained at constant temperatures. It may be a result of the large fluctuations in temperature resulting in the parasites not being exposed to warmer temperatures for long periods; and the very low temperatures ($10^{\circ}C$ or less) for much of

The growth of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> maintained at the ambient temperature from 1-7-1984 to 3-6-1985 Table 2.

Date sampled	Age	Number	% of fish	length	n (mm)	weight (mg)		No. of	segments	Egg	Temperature		
	(Days)	of worms	infected	x	б	x	0	x	5	Production	x	max	- min
3-9-1984	50	27	27.0	1.60	1.08	0.026	0.014	3.3	2.8	No	20.8	29	14
1-11-1984	102	21	21.0	14.8	9.97	0.084	0.048	63.0	24.3	No	15.8	26	8
2-1-1985	164	22	22.0	28.0	18.5	0.335	0.299	139.0	37.9	No	10.1	18	2
9-4-1985	261	20	18.2	100.4	79.5	2.116	2.790	186.1	114.3	No	8.3	17	0
3-6-1985	311	18	30.7	66.8	13.2	1.931	0.650	169.5	25.6	Yes	18.2	29	7

the experimental period (during which the constant temperature experiment indicated that no loss of parasites occurs).

Throughout the experimental period the B. acheilognathi increased in size (length, weight and number of segments), even when the mean temperature fell below 10°C (1-11-1984 to 9-4-1985). From the constant temperature experiments we would expect no growth to occur at temperatures of 10° C and lower. Indeed a preliminary experiment at 14°C showed there to be very little growth over the first 100 days (Mean length after 100 days = 1.25mm, SE = 0.32; mean weight = 0.021ug, SE =0.009; mean $_{1}^{NO}$ of segments = 2, SE = 0.32). Therefore any growth that occurred during this period must have taken place when the water temperature rose above 14°C. The observed growth is still considerably greater than might be expected from the constant temperature experiment at 18°C considering the short time period when the water would be at a temperature sufficient for growth to occur. Therefore it appears that the compensatory growth described by Davydov (1978) is occurring when the water temperature rises to a suitable level. In his experiments Davydov found that B. acheilognathi specimens transferred from natural winter conditions $(5-7^{\circ}C)$ to laboratory conditions $(14-16^{\circ}C)$ showed a very rapid increase in weight over the following 3 day period.

Despite the growth of the <u>B. acheilognathi</u> specimens throughout the winter period (1-11-1984 to 9-4-1985), it was noted that in the 9-4-1984 sample the proglottides had fully developed uteri, but that they were empty of eggs, indicating that egg production was not occurring. Nakajima and Egusa (1977) also observed that egg production did not occur at low temperatures (0.2-12°C). While

supporting Nakajima and Egusa's observation, the present study also shows that egg production did not occur in the short periods when the water temperature rose to 18° C. In a separate study eggs were produced from worms maintained at a constant temperature of 14° C. Therefore it appears that for egg production to occur, <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> has to be maintained at a temperature suitable for egg production for a certain minimum period of time.

It is interesting to note that the <u>B. acheilognathi</u> specimens examined in the 9-4-1985 sample did not show any signs of pseudapolysis, whereas in the 3-6-1985 sample all of the worms that were producing eggs had discarded spent proglottides. This phenomenon is presumably a result of the worms in the 9-4-1984 sample not having produced eggs. It would be interesting to see how large the <u>B. acheilognathi</u> specimens would grow if prevented from producing eggs but, allowed to grow by keeping them at a low fluctuating temperature; and if specimens approaching the size of those observed by Körting (Chapter 2) could be obtained.

8) The influence of the size of <u>C. carpio</u> on establishment of the plerocercoids of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>

Method

Using the method outlined previously (section 5) naive <u>C</u>. <u>carpio</u> ranging in size from 20 to 100mm in length were infected with 10 procercoids. 12 hours after feeding the fish were sacrificed and the number of plerocercoids established was recorded. The temperature throughout the experiment was maintained at 18° C and the photoperiod at 16L:8D.

Results

A significant negative correlation exists between the length of <u>C. carpio</u> and the percentage of plerocercoids that established within the intestine. This data is shown in figure 8 and can be described by the equation Y = -1.40x + 92.5, $r^2 = 0.70$ (where Y = % establishment of the procercoid and X = fork length of <u>C. carpio</u> in mm).

To ensure as far as possible that the <u>C. carpio</u> were equally susceptible to infection they were obtained from the same batch of fry (eliminating the effects of race described e.g. by Brown, 1984 pers. comm. for <u>Pomphorhynchus laevis</u> in <u>Salmo gairdneri</u>) and the fish were grown to the required size instead of taking fish of a range of sizes from the population at one time, in which case the smaller individuals may have been stunted, and less resistant to parasitic infection.

From Fig. 8 it appears that <u>C. carpio</u> above 63mm could not be infected with <u>B.</u> acheilognathi. Further evidence for a size dependent effect on establishment of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> has been provided by several authors. Liao and Shih (1956) observed that in natural conditions the incidence of parasitization of <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> declined when the fish were greater than 100mm in length, suggesting that the maximum size at which <u>C. idella</u> can be infected is greater than in <u>C. carpio</u>. Žitňan (1984) reported that <u>B. acheilognathi</u> infected <u>C. carpio</u> soon after hatching and thereafter the infection gradually declined. In general <u>B. acheilognathi</u> appears to infect underyearling fish with fewer and larger worms being found in 2 and 3 year old fish (Körting, 1974; Davydov, 1978; personal observations).



Figure 8: The influence of the length of <u>C. carpio</u> on the percentage of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> plerocercoids establishing within the intestine.

Y = -1.4X + 92.5 $r^2 = 0.70$

The mechanism operating within the host intestine preventing the establishment of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> is unclear. Specific antibody formation is unlikely to be responsible since there had been no previous infection. Previous studies in fishes have shown that at least 7 days are required to produce antibodies to a parasite or injected antibody (Cushing, 1942; Orr <u>et al.</u>, 1969). Antibodies specific to other parasites or other antigens have also been suggested as a means of rejecting intestinal parasites (McVicar and Fletcher, 1970), however the period of time between infection and examination was sufficiently short to prevent them causing the rejection of the plerocercoids.

The response by the <u>C. carpio</u> preventing the establishment or causing the rejection of the <u>B. acheilognathi</u> plerocercoids would have to be very quick acting since the fish were examined 12 hours after infection. Therefore it seems likely that it was a physical or physiological characteristic of the intestine of larger <u>C. carpio</u> that is affecting establishment.

It was thought that in the larger <u>C. carpio</u> the procercoids may not have been released by the maccerating action of the pharangeal teeth. To test this procercoids were released from the copepod by hand and introduced by stomach tube into the fore-intestine of small (10-30mm fork length) and large (70-80mm fork length) <u>C. carpio</u>. 43% of the procercoids established in the small <u>C. carpio</u>, whereas no establishment occurred in the larger fish, indicating that artificial release of the procercoids was having no effect on establishment.

Within the intestine, the plerocercoids and adult Pseudophyllidea are known to attach to the intestine by engulfing a fold in the intestinal wall using the bothrium (Wardle and McLeod.

Rees (1958) while studying the attachment of Clestobothrium 1952). crassiceps (which has a very similar scolex to B. acheilognathi) suggested that the bothria function by drawing a plug of the hosts mucosa in by suction, and then the sphincter muscle running around the bothrium margin would contract, so holding onto the intestine. She doubted that the musculature of the adult was sufficiently strong to pull the mucosa up from a flat surface. From this work it seems likely that the plerocercoids of B. acheilognathi have to attach to the intestinal folds using their bothria. Examination of the plerocercoids in situ supported this idea. Therefore the physical size of the intestinal folds in larger fish may prevent the bothria from becoming attached. Examination of the width of the intestinal folds in C. carpio showed them to be positively related to the size of the fish $(30 \text{ mm } \underline{C. \text{ carpio}}, \text{ mean fold width = 0.164 mm},$ SE = 0.012; 50mm C. carpio width = 0.183, SE = 0.016; 80mm C. carpio width = 0.300 mm, SE = 0.018). Measurement of the bothrium width of 10 plerocercoids relaxed in water until death gave a mean value of 0.057 mm, SE = 0.004. This value is misleading since the bothria were not opened to their maximum extent. This information supports the above idea, and it may be that C. carpio above 63mm in length have intestinal folds which are too large to be grasped by the bothria of a B. acheilognathi plerocercoid. Further work in this area is obviously necessary.

Discussion

It is interesting to compare the data obtained in this experimental study with the seasonal studies conducted by a number of authors and reviewed by Chubb (1982).

Nakajima and Egusa (1977) noted that the eggs of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> died rapidly at temperatures below 7°C, and were not produced at temperatures of less than 12° C. They therefore concluded that the life cycle was only continued overwinter in the adult stage. The present study has demonstrated that the eggs can hatch at temperatures of 4°C, and a temperature of 0°C does not kill them. In addition a temperature of 4°C was not lethal to the other stages of the life cycle, although development was greatly retarded. Therefore it appears the <u>B. acheilognathi</u> could overwinter in the egg, procercoid or adult stages.

The seasonal dynamics of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> have been studied by Liao and Shih (1956), Klenov (1972), Nakajima and Egusa (1977), Davydov (1978) and Žitňan (1984). The observed pattern of incidence can be explained using the results obtained in the present study. The overwintered worms would become mature, and egg production would commence when the temperature rose above 12°C (Nakajima and Egusa, 1977). The production and release of eggs would therefore coincide with the increase in water temperature and the resultant zooplankton bloom which occurs in spring and early summer. The hatching of the eggs of the cyprinid definitive host also tends to coincide with the zooplankton bloom, consequently there would be high densities of both intermediate and definitive hosts during this period resulting in a high level of efficiency of infection.

Throughout the summer period it is probable that the parasites are in an approximate state of dynamic equilibrium between recruitment of plerocercoids and loss of established worms (e.g. Kennedy, 1975; Chubb, 1982), with many of the worms being lost from the intestine before reaching maturity (e.g. Hopkins, 1959; Kennedy, 1983). In the autumn, however, the decreased water temperature would result in a reduced feeding rate by the fish, together with a reduction in the rate of egg production and development of B. acheilognathi. Consequently fewer plerocercoids would be available for infection. The scarcity or absence of infective procercoids over the winter period could explain the gradual decline in the intenstiy of infection (also observed for Proteocephalus filicollis by Hopkins, 1959). Below a temperature of approximately 10°C no loss of parasites was observed in experimental conditions, therefore the infection intensity might be expected to remain approximately the same throughout the winter period.

The lack of feeding by the definitive host at low temperatures may result in destrobilation or even loss of some worms (Davydov, 1978), and as such may explain the large loss of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> throughout the winter period described by Nakajima and Egusa (1977).

By combining the data presented in this chapter the time taken for <u>B. acheilognathi</u> to develop from an egg to an adult, and from an egg to a mature adult (having eggs in the uterus), can be estimated (see Table 3). As expected the time taken for completion of the life cycle decreased at higher temperatures. Comparable data presented by Davydov (1978) and Bauer <u>et al</u>. (1969) is consistant with the present study in the time taken to develop to an adult worm, but is considerably lower in the time taken to develop to maturity (as a result of the low values for adult development

Table 3. The effect of temperature on the time taken for the completion of the life cycle of B. acheilognathi.

12 The Second Second

Time for development (hours)									
Temp. ^O C	Egg	Coracidium	Procercoid	Adult (mature)	Egg to Adult	Egg to sexually Mature adult			
0	No development	-			_	-			
4	450-1686	No data	-	-	-	-			
10	301-1307	0,12	2640-3720	-	2941-5039 (122-210 days)	-			
16	136-616	No data	-	_	· _	-			
18	40-433	0.9	408-960	3120	448-1402 (19-58 days)	3568-4522 (149-188 days)			
25	40-252	0.6	288-660	2880	328-928 (14-39 days)	3208-3808 (133-159 days)			
30	40-144	0.5	121-408	1920	161-557 (7-23 days)	2081-2477 (87-103 days)			
35	27-117	No data	-	-	-	-			
40	No development	-	-	-	-	-			

indicated in section 7). Thus Davydov (1978) estimated that the egg developed to an adult in 42-56 days at 15-22°C and 168-224 days at $4-8^{\circ}$ C, and to a mature adult in 64-81 days at 15-22°C. Bauer <u>et al.</u> (1969) found that development to an adult required 13-22 days at 16-19°C; 7-15 days at 22-25°C and 5.5-8 days at 25-30°C; and to a mature adult in 33-43 days at 22-25°C, and 19-29 days at 22-25°C. It is interesting to note that Davydov (1978) found development occurred at $4-8^{\circ}$ C, whereas in the present study no development occurred at 10°C even after 300 days. The reason for this difference is unclear.

From the data presented it is possible to estimate the probability that a particular individual will complete each stage of the life cycle, and so calculate the probability that a parasite will develop from an egg into a mature adult. This was done for a range of temperatures, and is presented in table 4.

The data indicates that the major losses of parasites from the population occur at different stages of the life cycle at different temperatures. Thus at 4, 10 and 40° C the major loss ocurs in the egg to coracidium stage, at 35° C in the coracidium to procercoid stage, at 18° C in the coracidium to plerocercoid stage and at 25 and 30° C in the plerocercoid to mature adult stage. This differs from the findings of Jarroll (1980) for <u>B. rarus</u> and Dronen (1978) for <u>Haematolechus coloradensis who found the major losses in natural conditions were during the egg to early larval stages (procercoid and miracidium respectively). This may reflect the differences between natural and experimental conditions. The reasons for the temperature related mortality at each stage of the life cycle has been covered in the appropriate results section.</u>

Table 4. The effect of temperature on the maximum probability of a <u>B. acheilognathi</u> individual developing to the next life cycle stage under experimental conditions.

r

•

Life cycle stage	Temperature							
	0	4	10	18	25	30	35	40
Egg Coracidium	0	0.097	0.247	0.722	0,921	0,962	0.614	0
Coracidium procercoid	-	0	0.387	0.300	0.350	0.343	0	-
Procercoid plerocercoid	-	-	0.200	0.300	0.400	0.700	-	-
Plerocercoid mature adult	-	-	0	0.919	0.119	0.186	-	-
Egg Plerocercoid	-	-	0.019	0.069	0.129	0.231	-	-
Egg Mature adult	-	-	-	0.063	0.015	0.043	-	-

Using the fecundity estimate obtained at 18° C and combining it with the probability of an egg developing to a mature adult from table 4, it can be estimated that under experimental conditions a single <u>B. acheilognathi</u> at 18° C would give rise to approximately 11,400 mature adults in the next generation.

It is important to note that these values were obtained under experimental conditions, and as such take no account of losses due, for example, to consumption of eggs, coracidia and procercoids by unsuitable hosts; coracidia and procercoids being consumed at an uninfective stage, or not at all; and over infection of intermediate or definitive hosts causing their death.

Therefore infection intensities in natural conditions would be considerably lower than those found in the present study. In natural lakes the incidence of infected copepods is very low, even during severe parasitic outbreaks. For example Guttowa (1963) found only 0.8% of the copepods in a Finnish lake were infected during a severe outbreak of Diphyllobothrium latum. Similarly Watson and Lawler (1965) found 1-2% of the copepods in Lake Heming, Canada, were infected with Triaenophorus sp. with only 1-3 procercoids per copepod. In addition they noted that of the 10 species of copepod which could be experimentally infected only 1 species was infected in the wild. Even in aritifical conditions such as fish farms the percentage of copepods infected is considerably lower than in experimental conditions. For example Pimenova (1973) observed that 9.1% of the copepods in a fish farm pond in the U.S.S.R. were infected with B. acheilognathi; and Liao and Shih (1956) estimated that this value was 7% in fish ponds along the Pearl River, China; whereas in the experimental conditions of the present study up to 35% of the coracidia established with around 90% of the copepods

being infected.

Transmission rates will also be much lower in natural conditions than those estimated in the present study. In his study of the population dynamics of <u>B. rarus</u> in <u>Notophthalmus viridescens</u>, Jarroll (1980) calculated that the probability of an egg survivng to a procercoid was 0.022, of a procercoid surviving to a juvenile worm in a larval newt was 0.029, and in an adult newt was 0.038. Therefore the probability of an egg developing to a juvenile worm in a larval newt was 0.00064 and in an adult newt was 0.00084. These values are considerably lower than in the experiment of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> <u>C. carpio</u> system and are largely a result of the loss of parasites in a natural system (mentioned earlier), and the careful manipulation of the life cycle under laboratory conditons so that at each stage in the life cycle suitable succeptible hosts were available allowing maximal transmission rates.

What does the information presented in this chapter indicate about the survival of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> in the British Isles? figure 9 illustrates the seasonal fluctuation in water temperature in Crose Mere, Shropshire (Courtesy of Dr. J.O. Young), a typical eutrophic lake in which the cyprinid definitive hosts of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> might be found. The water temperatures recorded fall within the thermal limits of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (0-30°C), therefore if introduced the parasite could survive.

Under constant experimental conditions egg release was observed to occur at temperatures above 12°C. At Crose Mere this would result in egg release occurring from April until mid October, a total of 196 days. The eggs would survive throughout the year, however they would hatch most rapidly from June to August, when the



Figure 9: Seasonal changes in the water temperature at Crose Mere, Shropshire during 1977. Each point represents an average weekly value. (Courtesy of Dr. J. O. Young).

highest temperatures were recorded. Procercoid development would occur from March until late October (temperature greater than 10° C), and adult development would occur when the temperature rose above 14° C, i.e. a total of 154 days from mid April until October. Obviously development would also occur when the water temperature rose above these temperatures even when the mean value was lower.

In table 4 it was calculated that <u>B. acheilognathi</u> required 122-210 days at 10° C and 19-58 days at 18° C to develop from an egg to an adult worm; and 149-188 days at 18° C to develop to maturity. At Crose Mere the mean water temperature rose above 10° C for 203 days, and above 18° C for 84 days. Therefore the eggs released in April and May would develop into adult worms and possibly to maturity within a single year. The water temperature was not sufficiently high to allow the life cycle to be completed more than once within each year.

Therefore in a natural lake, such as Crose Mere, <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> could survive, but as a result of the slow generation time and large losses throughout the life span it is unlikely to be present in large numbers.

In aquaculture the situation would be different. In cyprinid culture it is a common policy to raise the water temperature to 20-25°C by the use of shallow ponds or by artificially increasing the temperature (Huet, 1973) in order to promote spawning and rapid fish growth. The raised temperatures would result in the more rapid completion of the life cycle (Table 4) resulting in one or possibly two generations of worms occurring within one year. This together with the increased probability of an egg developing to an adult at the increased temperature (Table 5), and the high densities of zooplankton (promoted by fertilizing the ponds) and cyprinid fry,

would lead to a rapid increase in the population size of \underline{B} . acheilognathi.

.,

Conclusions

The establishment, development and mortality of each stage in the life cycle of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> was observed to be temperature dependent. In addition the infectivity of the coracidium and procercoid was age dependent, with coracidium infectivity decreasing with age, and the procercoid being infective upon development of the bothria. Development of the procercoid was influenced by the age of the coracidium when ingested by the <u>Cyclops</u> <u>agilis</u> intermediate host. The infectivity of the procercoid was found to be inversely related to the density within the intermediate host.

Estimation of the time taken for the completion of the life cycle at temperatures from $18-30^{\circ}$ C showed it to be inversely related to temperature. Comparison of these values with the seasonal fluctuations in water temperature in a typical eutrophic lake indicated that <u>B. acheilognathi</u> could survive there, with completion of the life cycle occurring within one year.

The size of the <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> definitive host influenced the ability of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> plerocercoids to establish, with no establishment occurring in <u>C. carpio</u> greater than 63 mm fork length. It was suggested that the size of the intestinal folds in fish greater than 64 mm may prevent attachment by the bothria.

References

- Aho, J. M. and Kennedy, C. R. (1984) Seasonal population dynamics of the nematode <u>Cystidicoloides tenuissima</u> (Zeder) from the River Swincombe, England. Journal of Fish Biology 25, 473-489.
- Amman, F. (1955) Der Befall des Bodenseefische mit <u>Triaenophorus</u> unter besonderers Beruksichtigung des biologischen Cyclus. Munchen pp1-87.
- Anderson, R. M. (1974) Caryophyllaeus laticeps (Pallas, 1781) in
 - the bream (<u>Abramis abramis</u> L.). Journal of Animal Ecology 43, 305-321.
- Anderson, R. M. (1976) Seasonal variation in the population dynamics of <u>Caryophyllaeus</u> <u>laticeps</u>. Parasitology 72, 281-305.
- Anderson, R.M. and Whitfield, P.J. (1975) Survival characteristics of the free living cercarial population of the ectoparasitic digenean <u>Transversometra patialensis</u> (Soparker, 1924). Parasitology 70, 295-310.
- Anderson, R. M. and Lethbridge, R. C. (1975) An experimental study of the survival characteristics, activity and energy reserves of the hexacanths of <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u>. Parasitology 71, 137-151.
- Andreassen, J. and Hopkins, C. A. (1980) Immunologically medicated rejection of <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u> by its normal host the rat. Journal of Parasitology 66, 898-903.
- Awachie, J. B. E. (1963) The ecology of intestinal parasites of fish of Afon Terrig, North Wales. Ph.D. Thesis, University of Liverpool.
- Bauer, O. N.; Musselius, V. A.; Strelkov, Yu. A. (1969 Translation 1973) Diseases of pond fishes. Isreal Program for Scientific Translations Cat. No. 60118 9.
- Boyce, N. P. J. (1974) Biology of <u>Eubothrium salvelini</u> (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea), a parasite of juvenile sockeye salmon (<u>Onchorynchus nerka</u>) of Babine Lake, British Columbia. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 31, 1735-1742.
- Brown, A. F. (1984) The ecology of <u>Pomphorhynchus</u> <u>laevis</u> (Muller, 1776) (Acanthocephala) in the River Severn, England. Ph.D. Thesis, University of Liverpool.
- Chubb, J. C. (1980) Seasonal occurrence of helminths in freshwater fishes. Part III. Larval Cestoda and Nematoda. Advances in Parasitology 18, 1-120.
- Chubb, J. C. (1981) The Chinese tapeworm <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934 (synonym <u>B. gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955) in Britain. In Proceedings of the Second British Freshwater Fisheries Conference, University of Liverpool pp40-51.
- Chubb, J. C. (1982) Seasonal occurrence of helminths in freshwater fishes. Part IV. Adult Cestoda, Nematoda and Acanthocephala. Advances in Parasitology 20, 1-292.
- Clarke, A. S. (1954) Studies on the life cycle of the pseudophyllidean cestode <u>Schistocephalus</u> <u>solidus</u>. Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London 124, 257-302.
- Crompton, D. W. T. (1973) The sites occupied by some parasitic helminths in the alimentary tract of vertebrates. Biological Reviews 48, 27-83.

- Cushing, J. E. (1942) An effect of temperature upon antibody production in fish. Journal of Immunology 45, 123-126.
- Davydov, O. N. (1978) Growth, development and fecundity of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis (Yeh, 1955) a cyprinid parasite. Translation Hydrobiological Journal (1979) 14, 60-66.
- Dronen, N. O. (1978) Host-parasite population dynamics of <u>Haematolechus</u> <u>coloradensis</u> Cort, 1915 (Digenea: Plagiorchiidae). American Midlands Naturalist 99, 330-349.
- Dutt, S. C. and Srivastava, H. D. (1962) Biological studies on <u>Orientobilharzia</u> <u>dattai</u> (Dutt and Srivastava, 1952) Dutt and Srivastava, 1955 - a blood fluke of ruminants. Indian Journal of Veterinary Science 32, 216-228.
- Dubinina, M. N. (1966, translated 1980) Tapeworms (Cestoda, Ligulidae) of the fauna of the USSR. Amerind publishing Company.
- Farley, J. (1962) The effect of temperature and pH on the longevity of <u>Schistosomatium douthitti</u> miracidia. Canadian Journal of Zoology 40, 615-620.
- Grabiec, S.; Guttowa, A.; Michajlow, W. (1962) New data on the ciliated envelope of the coracidium of <u>Triaenophorus</u> <u>nodulosus</u> (Pall.) (Cestoda, Pseudophyllidea). Bulletin de l'Academie Polonaise des Sciences 10, 439-441.
- Grabiec, S.; Guttowa, A.; Jakutowicz, K.; Michajlow, W. (1965) Studies on high energy compounds in coracidia of <u>Triaenophorus nodulosus</u> (Pall.) in various periods of their life. Acta Parasitologica Polonica 13, 19-24.

Granath, W. O. Jr. and Esch, G. W. (1983a) Seasonal dynamics of

Bothriocephalus acheilognathi in ambient and thermally altered areas of a North Carolina reservoir. Proceedings of the Helminthological Society of Washington 50, 205-218.

- Granath, W. O. Jr. and Esch, G. W. (1983b) Temperature and other factors in regulating infrapopulation densities and composition of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> in <u>Gambusia</u> affinis. Journal of Parasitology 69, 116-124.
- Guttowa, A. (1958) Further research on the effect of temperature on the development of the cestode <u>Triaenophorus lucii</u> (Mull) embryo's in the eggsandontheinvadability of their onchospheres. Acta Parasitologica Polonica 6, 367-381.
- Guttowa, A. (1963) Natural focus of infection of plankton crustaceans with procercoids of <u>Diphyllobothrium latum</u> L. in Finland. Acta Parasitologica Polonica 11, 145-152.
- Halvorsen, O. (1966) Studies on the helminth fauna of Norway. VIII. An experimental investigation of copepods as first intermediate hosts for <u>Diphyllobothrium norvegicum</u> Vik (cestoda). Nytt Magasin for Zoologi 13, 83-117.

1

- Halvorsen, O. and Andersen, K. (1974) Observations on <u>Diphyllobothrium ditremum</u> in an ecosystem. Norwegian Journal of Zoology 23, 201-202.
- Hoffman, G. L. (1976) The Asian tapeworm <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>gowkongensis</u>, in the United States, and research needs in fish parasitology. In proceedings of the 1976 Fish Farming Conference and annual convention of the Catfish Farmers of Texas, Texas Agricultural and Mechanical university College Station pp84-90.
- Hopkins, C. A. (1959) Seasonal variations in the incidence and development of the cestode <u>Proteocephalus</u> <u>filicollis</u>

(Rud, 1810) in <u>Gasterosteus aculeatus</u> (L., 1766). Parasitology 49, 529-542.

- Hopkins, C. A. (1980) Immunity and <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u>. In Biology of the Tapeworm <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u>. Arai, H. P. ed. Academic press pp 551-614.
- Huet, M. (1973) Textbook of fish culture: breeding and cultivation of fish. Fishing News (books) Ltd.
- Jarroll, E. L. Jr. (1980) Population dynamics of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>rarus</u> (Cestoda) in <u>Notophthalmus viridescens</u>. The American Midlands Naturalist 103, 360-366.
- Kennedy, C. R. (1969) Seasonal incidence and development of the cestode <u>Caryophyllaeus laticeps</u> (Pallas) in the River Avon. Parasitology 59, 783-794.
- Kennedy, C. R. (1971) The effect of temperature upon the establishment and survival of the cestode <u>Caryophyllaeus</u> <u>laticeps</u> in orfe, <u>Leuciscus</u> <u>idus</u>. Parasitology 63, 59-66.
- Kennedy, C. R. (1975) 'Ecological Animal Parasitology.' Blackwell Scientific Publications, Oxford.
- Kennedy, C. R. (1983) General Ecology. In Biology of the Eucestoda. Volume 1. Eds. Arme, C. and Papas, P. W.. Academic Press pp 27-80.
- Kennedy, C. R. and Walker, P. J. (1969) Evidence for an immune response by dace, <u>Leuciscus leuciscus</u>, to infections by the cestode <u>Caryophyllaeus laticeps</u>. Journal of Parasitology 55, 579-582.
- Keymer, A. E. (1980) The influence of <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u> on the survival and fecundity of the intermediate host, <u>Tribolium</u> confusum. Parasitology 81, 405-421.

- Keymer, A. E. (1982) The dynamics of infection of <u>Tribolium</u> <u>confusum</u> by <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u>: the influence of exposure time and host density. Parasitology 84, 157-166.
- Keymer, A. E. and Anderson, R. M. (1979) The dynamics of infection of <u>Tribolium confusum</u> by <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u>: the influence of infective stage density and spatial distribution. Parasitology 79, 195-207.
- Klenov, A. P. (1972) Seasonal and age dynamics of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>gowkongensis</u> infection in <u>Ctenopharyngodon</u> <u>idella</u>. Byulleten Vsesoyuznogo Instituta Gel'mintologii im. K. I. Skryabina 8, 25-27. (In Russian).
- Körting, W. (1974) Bothriocephalosis of the carp. Veterinary Medical Review 2, 165-171.
- Körting, W. (1975) Larval development of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> sp. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from carp (<u>Cyprinus carpio</u> L.) in Germany. Journal of Fish Biology 7, 727-733.
- Kuperman, B. I. (1973) Tapeworms of the genus <u>Triaenophorus</u>, parasites of fishes. Experimental, taxonomy, ecology. Izdatel'stvo "Nauka", Leningrad pp1-207. (In Russian, translation British Library RTS 10341-10347.)
- Liao, H.-L. and Shih, L.-C. (1956) Contribution to the biology and control of <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> Yeh, a tapeworm parasite in young grass carp (<u>Ctenopharyngodon idellus</u> C. and V.). Acta Hydrobiologica Sinica 2, 129-185. (In Chinese).
- McVicar, A. H. and Fletcher, T. C. (1970) Serum factors in <u>Raja</u> <u>radiata</u> toxic to <u>Acanthobothrium quadripartium</u> (Cestoda: tetraphyllidea), a parasite specific to <u>R. naevus</u>. Parasitology 61, 55-63.

- Michajlow, W. (1953) The inter species relationships in the procercoid populations of <u>Triaenophorus lucii</u> (Mull). Acta Parasitologica Polonica 1, 1-28.
- Moore, J. (1981) Asexual reproduction and environmental predictability in cestodes (Cyclophyllidea: Taenidae). Evolution 35, 723-741.
- Mueller, J. F. (1959) The laboratory propagation of <u>Spirometra</u> <u>mansonoides</u> as an experimental tool. 1. Collecting, incubation and hatching of the eggs. Journal of Parasitology 45, 353-361.
- Nakajima, K. and Egusa, S. (1976) <u>Bothriocephalus opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) found in the gut of cultured carp, <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> (Linne) - IV. Observations on the egg and coracidium. Fish Pathology 11, 17-22. (In Japanese).
- Nakajima, K. and Egusa, S. (1977) <u>Bothriocephalus opsariichthydis</u> Yamaguti (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) found in the gut of cultured carp, <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> (Linne) - VI. Some ecological changes of the adult worm wintered within the host. Fish Pathology 12, 1-2. (In Japanese).
- Neuymin, I. V. (1953) Influence of environmental factors on development and survival of the broad fish tapeworm. Reports of the Fifth Reading in Honour of the Memory of N. A. Kholodkovskiy. Acad Sci USSR Press. pp22-31. (In Russian).
- Orr, T. S. C.; Hopkins, C. A.; Charles, G. H. (1969) Host specificity and rejection of <u>Schistocephalus</u> <u>solidus</u>. Parasitology 59, 683-690.

- Par, O. (1978) Effect of low intensity infections with the cestode <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> on the condition and physiological indications of the state of health of carp. Buletin VUHR Vodnany, CSSR 14, 26-33. (In Russian).
- Pimenova, L. P. (1971) The development of coracidia and procercoids of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis under natural conditions (fish breeding ponds). Byulleten Vsesyuznogo Instituta Gel'mintologii im. K. I. Skryabina 5, 75-78. (In Russian).
- Pimenova, L. P. (1973) The infection of the intermediate hosts with <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> larvae in fish breeding ponds and water reservoirs in the central nechernozem zone. Byulleten Vsesoyuznogo instituta Gel'mintologii im. K. I. Skryabina 10, 85-89. (In Russian).
- Pool, D.; Ryder, K.; Andrews, C. (1984) The control of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> in the grass carp <u>Ctenopharyngodon</u> <u>idella</u> using praziquantel. Fisheries Management 15, 31-33.
- Read, C. P. (1951) The 'crowding effect' in tapeworm infections. Journal of Parasitology 37, 174-178.
- Rees, G. (1958) A comparison of the structure of the scolex of <u>Bothriocephalus scorpii</u> (Mueller 1776) and <u>Clestobothrium</u> <u>crassiceps</u> (Rud. 1819) and the mode of attachment of the scolex to the intestine of the host. Parasitology 48, 468-492.
- Roberts, L. S. (1961) The influence of population densities on patterns and physiology of growth in <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> (Cestoda: Cyclophyllidea) in the definitive host. . . .

Smith, H. D. (1973) Observations on the cestode Eubothrium

<u>salvelini</u> (Schrank 1790) in juvenile sockeye salmon (<u>Onchorynchus nerka</u>) in Babine Lake, British Columbia. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 30, 947-964.

- Strazhnik, L. V. and Davydov, O. N. (1975) On the role of high temperature in the vital activity of some fish cestodes. Parazitologiya 9, 37-46. (In Russian).
- Thomas, L. J. (1937) Environmental relations and life history of the tapeworm <u>Bothriocephalus rarus</u> Thomas. Journal of Parasitology 23, 133-152.
- Wardle, R. A. and McLeod, J. A. (1952) The zoology of tapeworms. University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis.
- Watson, N. H. F. and Lawler, G. H. (1963) Temperature and the rate of hatching of <u>Triaenophorus</u> eggs. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 20, 249-251.
- Watson, N. H. F. and Lawler, G. H. (1965) Natural infections of cyclopid copepods with procercoids of <u>Triaenophorus</u> spp. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 22, 1335-1343.
- Watson, N. H. F. and Price, J. L. (1960) Experimental infections of cyclopid copepods with <u>Triaenophorus crassus</u> Forel and <u>T.</u> <u>nodulosus</u> (Pallas). Canadian Journal of Zoology 38, 345-356.
- Zelazny, J. (1979) Influence of some physical agents and chemical compounds on hatchability and vitality of coracidia of <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955. Bulletin of the Veterinary Institute in Pulawy 23, 20-24.

Žitňan, R. (1984) New helminthoses of the carp in the Carpathian

region of Czechoslovakia. Symposia Biologica Hungarica 23, 157-172.

Chapter 4

The movement of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> within the intestine of the cyprinid host, and its relationship with egg release

.

Introduction

Periodic activity is a well known phenomenon which has been widely reported in the animal kingdom. Perhaps the commonest and most important biological rhythms are those occurring on an approximately 24 hour cycle. Such rhythms, variously referred to as diurnal, circadian or diel, have been comprehensively reviewed by Hawking (1975).

In the course of other experiments using mature <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u>, it was noted firstly that the worms appeared to be in different regions of the host intestine at different times of the day, and secondly that egg release varied throughout the day.

The movement of parasites from one site to another within the host has been the subject of a large amount of research (reviewed by Crompton 1973; Holmes, 1973; and Hawking, 1975). Following the definitions proposed by Heape (1931) and Allee <u>et al.</u> (1949), Crompton (1973) suggested that this movement be divided into emigration and migration: emigration being a movement involving a change in site without a return journey, and migrations being movements involving a regular phase of coming and going between sites or within a site.

Emigratory activity is exhibited by many parasites during the process of the initial site selection within the host, and occasionally as a result of inter- or intraspecific interactions,

Migratory activity is less frequently observed among parasites. Mackenzie and Gibson (1970) noted the the trematode <u>Podocotyle</u> sp. and the nematodes <u>Cucullanus heterochrous</u>, <u>C. minutus</u> and <u>Contracaecum aduncum</u> moved from the anterior intestine to the rectum in association with the movement of food. Similar migrations occur

in the intestine of <u>Gqdus morhua</u> by <u>Contracaecum aduncum</u>; the stomach of the rays <u>Raia radiata</u> and <u>R. naevus</u> by the trematode <u>Otodistomum</u> sp.; and the spiral valves of the same rays by the cestode <u>Grillolia</u> sp. (Williams <u>et al.</u>, 1970).

A large body of literature exists on the emigratory and migratory activity of the cyclophylidean cestode <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> in its rat definitive host (see Arai, 1980 for review). The emigratory behaviour of <u>H. diminuta</u> was first recorded by Chandler (1939). He noted that 24 hours after infection the newly attached scolices were located approximately halfway along the intestine, but on the 7th to the 10th days post infection the worms moved forward to the anterior part of the small intestine. Later workers confirmed this anterior movement to the favoured site by means of surgical transplantation of the young adults (e.g. Braten and Hopkins, 1969).

The circadian migration of <u>H. diminuta</u> was described by Read and Kilejian (1969) and Hopkins (1970). They observed a periodic change in the distribution of the total worm tissue and in the location of the scolices in the rat intestine. The worms were situated in the anterior of the small intestine when food was present in the stomach, but moved to a more posterior position when the stomach was empty. Bailey (1971) confirmed this migration in rats fed <u>ad libitum</u>, and showed that the migration did not occur in starved rats, suggesting that it was exogenous in nature (a response to an environmental change which did not persist under constant conditions (Harker, 1958)).

The migration of <u>H. diminuta</u> of varying ages was investigated by Chappell <u>et al.</u> (1970). They observed three age dependent phases

of migration: from day 5 to day 7 post infection the worms moved anteriorly when the intestine was devoid of food and posteriorly when food was present - the opposite to the normal adult migration; a brief period when no migrations occurred (days 7-8) was followed by the normal adult migration as described by Read and Kilejian (1969).

The studies of Read and Kilejian (1969), Hopkins (1969, 1970), Bailey (1971), Chappell <u>et al</u>. (1970) and Mettrick (1971a, 1972) indicate that the circadian migration exhibited by <u>H. diminuta</u> is related to host feeding. Subsequently it was demonstrated that organic or inorganic constituents of a liquid meal, when fed via a stomach tube, did not explain the previously described migratory activity (Mettrick 1971a). Similarly a number of physical (Mettrick 1971b, 1971c) and chemical (Mettrick 1971a, 1972, 1975) gradients within the intestine could not be correlated with the rhythmic movements of H. diminuta.

Mettrick (1973) demonstrated that stimulation of the vagal nerve induced anteriad migration of the worms in the small intestine. Vagal stimulation mimics the normal vagal response to host feeding, suggesting that the migratory behaviour was not directly caused by the presence of nutrients within the intestine, but indirectly via the parasympathetic nerve stimulation of gastrointestinal function (Mettrick and Cho 1981a, 198ab; Cho and Mettrick 1982). These studies also provided circumstantial evidence that a major factor in the worm response was the changing levels of intestinal serotonin (5 Hydroyxtryptamine). Cho and Mettrick (1982) indicated that the circadian migration shown by <u>H. diminuta</u> was correlated with similar changes in luminal serotonin levels in the small intestine, which in turn was related to the pattern of host

feeding. Intraperitoneal, intramuscular, subcutaneous and oral administration of serotonin resulted in a dose-dependent anteriad migration by <u>H. diminuta</u> (Mettrick and Cho, 1981b). Further evidence that serotonin was directly involved in the migratory behaviour of <u>H. diminuta</u> was provided by Mettrick and Cho (1982). They introduced two serotonin inhibitors (methysergide hydrogenmaleinate and magnesium sulphate) into the intestine via a stomach tube, and observed that the migratory activity was reduced or stopped.

The release of eggs by certain parasites has also been reported to follow a circadian cycle. Phillipson (1973) observed that the mouse nematode <u>Aspiculuris tetraptera</u> released most of its eggs during the hours of darkness, reaching a peak just before dawn. Egg output was not always proportional to faeces production, but often it was greatest when faeces production was highest.

A similar situation was reported to occur in the trematode <u>Schistosoma haematobium</u>. In this parasite the eggs were discharged in the urine of the infected human. The number of eggs passed out was not in proportion to the volume of urine, but showed a distinct peak at around 10.00 in the morning. Since the snail vectors are more active during the daytime, cyclical activity such as this would facilitate transmission of the parasite (Dukes and Davidson, 1968). No information is available concerning the mechanisms responsible for this rhythmic discharge of ova.

Not all parasites show a circadian rhythm in the production of their eggs. The trematode <u>Phyllodistomum folium</u> showed alternating periods of ovarian activity and rest with, in any fourteen day period, two resting sequences (Johnston, 1967).

The purpose of this chapter is to examine in greater detail, the preliminary observations concerning the movement of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> in the <u>C. carpio</u> intestine and the daily variation in the release of eggs in order to determine a) if the movement within the intestine is emigratory, migratory or a simple contraction and expansion of the strobila; b) if the two phenomena follow a circadian rhythm, c) the effect of altering the feeding regime, d) the rate at which the worms respond to the entry of food into the intestine, and e) if there was any relationship between worm movement and egg production.

Method

In all of the experiments 1 year old <u>Cyprinis carpio</u> infected with 1-12 <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> per fish were used. The fish were acclimated for a period of 30 days in aquaria maintained at 18°C, with a 16 light:8 dark photoperiod (light from 6.00 a.m. to 10.00 p.m.) and fed daily at 9.00 a.m. with Omega number 4 trout pellets.

Movement of B. acheilognathi within the host intestine

5 infected <u>C. carpio</u> were killed by means of a sharp blow on the head 1, 6, 12, 18 and 24 hours post feeding. The intestine was quickly removed, unravelled and carefully slit open. The most anterior and posterior position occupied by the cestodes was recorded as a percentage of the total intestine length (0% being the anterior of the intestine and 100% the anus). The intestine was flushed with 0.9% saline and the percentage position of each of the scolices was recorded.

Altering the feeding regime

As a control to the above experiment, and in order to demonstrate that the movement of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> was dependent on the passage of food through the intestine, a second batch of infected <u>C. carpio</u> were starved throughout the 24 hour period. The percentage position of the worms and scolices was recorded as above.

Two further experiments were conducted to determine the relationship between worm movement and the time when the host was fed. The fish were maintained in the acclimated conditions, but were fed 12 hours later (at 9.00p.m.) or at 12 hourly intervals (at

9.00 a.m. and 9.00 p.m.). Fish were sacrificed at a range of times post feeding and the percentage position of the worms and the scolices was recorded.

<u>Rate of reaction of the worms to the presence of food in the</u> <u>intestine</u>

Preliminary observations suggested that the cestodes occupied a more anterior position when food was present in the intestine. To determine the reaction time of the worms to the entry of food into the intestine 5 <u>C. carpio</u> were killed and processed as above 10 minutes before feeding and 5, 10 and 30 minutes after feeding.

Rate of passage of food through the intestine

Uninfected <u>C. carpio</u> of the same size as the infected fish were acclimated to the conditions described previously. To determine the rate of passage of food through the intestine the fish were given a single meal at 9.00 a.m. consisting of trout pellets impregnated with a carmine dye (Rosin & Mayor, 1961). At 2 hourly intervals post feeding a sample of 5 fish were sacrificed and the percentage position of the dyed pellet material was recorded. In addition the gut was divided into 5 equal sections, and the contents placed on a preweighed, dry filter paper. After drying for 2 days at $50-60^{\circ}$ C the weight of the faeces was recorded.

Egg release by B. acheilognathi

Infected <u>C. carpio</u> were maintained singly in aquaria for a 14 day acclimation period in the conditions described previously. On day 15 the <u>C. carpio</u> were fed at 9.00 a.m. and faeces produced were

collected at hourly intervals for 24 hours, and at 2 hourly intervals for the subsequent 24 hours. To facilitate the collection of faeces, the aquaria were inclined at an angle of approximately 30° allowing the faecal material to be removed using a siphon without excessively disturbing the fish.

A faecal squash was prepared for each sample and the number of eggs present was counted using a light microscope at x100 magnification. The weight of the faeces was determined after drying for 2 days at 50-60°C.

Faecal egg counts were also taken from <u>C. carpio</u> starved for the 48 hours period, and from carp fed at 12 hourly intervals.

Results

1) Movement of B. acheilognathi in host intestine

In experiment 1 the percentage mid point position of the worms showed a significant movement along the intestine during the 24 hours period after feeding (t between positions 1 and 24 hours after feeding = 5.861 p < 0.001) (Table 1). This movement was linear, and can be described by the equation (Y = 0.73/+ 27.61), where Y = the percentage mid point of the worm and X = the time after feeding (Fig. 1a).

1 hour after feeding the <u>C. carpio</u> a second time the percentage mid point position of the worms had returned to the position occupied previously 1 hour after feeding (t = 0.1611, p > 0.5), indicating that the movement was cyclical.

Throughout the 25 hour period the scolices of the worms showed no significant movement (using Kruskal-Wallis test, H = 5.3686, 0.5(p < 0.25) suggesting that they remained attached to the intestine. The movement of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> cannot therefore be described as a migration or an emmigration (as defined by Crompton, 1973), but as a cyclical contraction and elongation of the strobila. The worm contracts its strobila within 1 hour of food entering the intestine, and then gradually extends the strobila along the intestine until 24 hours after feeding, it is at its maximum extension (see Plate 1a and b).

One hour after feeding the worms were observed to occupy their most anterior position in the intestine. In many cases the strobila of the worm was folded in addition to being contracted, which resulted in its extending to the anterior of the scolex.



Figure 1: The relationship between the percentage mid-point position of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> specimens in the intestine of <u>C. carpio</u> and the time after feeding.

a. <u>C. carpio</u> fed at 9.00am.

Y = 0.73X + 27.61 Corr. coef. = 0.8886



Plate 1: The position of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> within the <u>C. carpio</u> intestine, fed at 24 hour intervals.

- a. 1 hour after feeding.
- b. 24 hours after feeding.

When starved for the 24 hour experimentation period the percentage position of the scolices and the percentage mid point position of the worms did not vary significantly (H = 1.5845, 0.9< ρ <0.75). Therefore the cyclical movements observed in experiment 1 are exogenous in nature, being a response to the presence of food in the host intestine or some factor associated with it.

Experiment 3 provides additional evidence for this. When the fish were fed 12 hours later than during the acclimation period, the movement of the strobila was delayed by 12 hours (Fig. 1b) It was still linear, described by the equation Y = 0.77X + 27.10 and significant (t between position 1 and 24 hours after feeding = 7.475, p < 0.001).

When the carp were fed at 12 hour intervals the strobila moved along the intestine in two distinct phases (Fig. 1c). In each case, in the 12 hour period after the fish were fed, the extension of the strobila was linear and significant (from 1-12 hours after 9.00 a.m. feeding Y = 0.51X + 28.44, t between 1 and 12 hours after feeding = 6.882, p < 0.001; and from 1-12 hours after 9.00 p.m. feeding Y = 0.42X + 29.89, t between 1 and 12 hours after feeding = 4.4399, p< 0.005). The contraction and elongation of the strobila is therefore not circadian, but is associated with the host feeding activity.

The movement of the strobila was cyclical, with the worms occupying the same position 1 hour after feeding (t = 2.205, p< 0.05). No significant variation in the percentage position of the scolices was observed (using Kruskal-Wallis test, H = 1.585, p<0.5).

Comparison of the slopes of the four regression lines obtained in these experiments using analysis of covariance indicated that there was no difference between the slopes, i.e. between the rates at which the strobila extended along the intestine (F = 2.914, p>







1c. <u>C. carpio</u> fed at 9.0am and 9.0pm. After feeding at 9.0am: Y = 0.84X + 27.41 Corr. coef. = 0.8891 After feeding at 9.0pm: Y = 0.81X + 25.96 Corr. coef. = 0.8246

0.05) or between the elevations, i.e. between the most anterior positions occupied by the worms (F = 1.612, 0.5).

The rate of passage of food through the intestine of the <u>C</u>. <u>carpio</u> is illustrated in figure 2. Intestinal material stained with carmine was present in the rectum after 9 hours and was completely eliminated from the intestine after 24 hours. The distribution of the carmine stained material at various times after fee ding is illustrated in figure 3.

There appears to be a close association between the position of the main mass of the carmine stained material (Fig. 3) and the position occupied by <u>B. acheilognathi</u> (Table 1). So that, for example, 1 hour post feeding the main mass of the food is in the anterior 40% of the intestine, and the position occupied by the worms extends from 10% to 50% of the way along the intestine. After 12 hours the food is situated from 0 to 60% of the way along the intestine, and the worms extended from 10 to 59% of the way along the intestine. After 24 hours the small amount of material present in the intestine was in the posterior 40%, and the worms extended from 16.4 to 79% of the way along the intestine.

Rate of reaction of worms to presence of food in intestine

Examination of the percentage mid point of the worms 5 minutes after feeding indicated that the strobila had significantly contracted towards the anterior of the intestine (t = 4.051, 0.005 (p < 0.002)). This anterior movement continued until 10 minutes post feeding when the most anterior position occupied by the worms was observed. No posterior movement of the strobila was observed between 10 and 60 minutes post feeding (t = 0.4614 p > 0.5). The



Figure 2: The passage of carmine stained trout pellets through the intestine of <u>C. carpio</u> at 18 °C.



Figure 3: The distribution of carmine stained trout pellets in the intestine of <u>C. carpio</u> at 18 O C.

Table 1. The position occupied by <u>B. acheilognathi</u> over a 24 hour period, when the <u>C. carpio</u> host was fed at 24 hourly intervals.

Time after feeding	Maximum and minimum 🖇	Mean 🖇 worm	SE
(hours).	worm position.	position.	
1	10.0 - 50.0	28,6	2,32
6	13.7 - 54.7	32.6	0.69
12	10.0 - 59.0	35.1	0.80
18	14.0 - 74.1	40.2	1.14
24	16.4 - 79.0	45.9	1,80
1	15.3 - 49.5	29.1	1.18

contraction of the strobila after food enters the intestine is shown in figure 4.

Egg release by B. acheilognathi

The faecal egg counts of 4 fish infected with between 1 and 7 worms are illustrated in figure 5a. In each case there is a large, and obviously significant increase in the numbers of eggs recovered from faeces 1 to 4 hours after the fish were fed. No correlation was observed between faecal egg count and faecal weight (Spearmans rank correlation r = 0.1032, 0.5).

When the fish were starved for the 48 hour period the number of eggs recovered from the faeces showed a significant variation (Fish 1, $x^2 = 116.89$. Fish 2, $x^2 = 133.95$. Fish 3, $x^2 = 150.04$. Fish 4, $x^2 = 141.52$. Ho = no variation in faecal egg count p<0.001) however there were no large peaks in the faecal egg count as observed when the fish were fed (Fig. 5c).

The effect of feeding the carp at intervals of 12 hours is presented in figure 5b. The faecal egg counts showed a significant increase between 6 and 10 hours after feeding. Therefore egg release does not follow a circadian pattern, but is related to the time at which the fish host was fed.

It is interesting to note that mature proglottides were recovered from aquaria containing fish 1 and 4. Similar proglottides have been recovered from aquaria containing infected fish on a number of previous occasions. In each instance the shed proglottides contained very few eggs. Examination of the terminal proglottides of mature <u>B. acheilognathi</u> collected from the intestine of the carp host revealed them to contain fewer eggs than more anterior mature proglottides and in many instances contained a



Figure 4: The relationship between the percentage mid-point position of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> specimens in the intestine of <u>C.</u> <u>carpio</u>.and the time after feeding.



Figure 5: Faecal egg counts from <u>C. carpio</u> infected with <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u>.

a. <u>C. carpio</u> fed at 24 hour intervals.

•









•

similar number of eggs to the expelled proglottides. The evidence suggests that in <u>B. acheilognathi</u> exhausted proglottides break from the strobila and are expelled from the fish intestine. This phenomenon, termed pseudopolysis by Nybelin (1922) (translation Wardle and Mcleod, 1952), has also been reported to occur in other pseudophyllidean species, for example in <u>Dibothriocephalus latus</u> (=<u>D. latum</u>) (Wardle and Mcleod, 1952) and <u>Eubothrium salvelini</u> (Boyce, 1974). Nybelin (1952) noted that members of the genus <u>Bothriocephalus</u> have internal divisions between groups of genitalia enabling proglottides to be shed without disrupting the internal organisation of the worm. It is unlikely that the number of eggs release from the shed proglottides will affect the observed pattern of the faecal egg counts.

When examining the data for the faecal egg counts it is important to note that there is a potentially large error resulting from the dissociation of some eggs from the faeces. These eggs would not be collected by siphoning and therefore would not be counted. The size of this error is probably related to the number of eggs present in the faeces and is therefore unlikely to affect the observed pattern of the faecal egg counts.

Discussion

Throughout this investigation <u>C. carpio</u> containing between 1 and 12 <u>B. acheilognathi</u> were used therefore intraspecific interactions may be influencing the results. Hopkins and Allen (1979) suggested that the position of <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u> in multiple infections would be more variable because individual worms would be screened from location stimuli. In addition Mettrick and Podesta (1974) noted that <u>H. diminuta</u> could alter their environment, resulting in a change in behaviour. The effect of worm burden was investigated by Read and Kilejian (1969) who observed the migration of <u>H. diminuta</u> in rat intestines containing 1, 10 and 30 worms. They concluded that the migratory behaviour was independent of worm burden.

In this investigation the similarity of the results obtained from carp containing different numbers of worms indicates that worm burden had an insignificant effect on worm movement.

The data presented clearly demonstrate a cyclical contraction and extension of the strobila of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> within the <u>C.</u> <u>carpio</u> intestine. However Hopkins (1970), when working with <u>H.</u> <u>diminuta</u> in rats, noted that the size of the worm may affect the distance that the strobila could stretch down the intestine, and that because of this it was difficult to unequivocably demonstrate that the position of the strobila changed through the day. To minimise the effects of differences in worm size in the present study, the fish to be sacrificed at any particular time were taken at random from a population of fish infected with worms of the same age. Therefore there should have been a randomly distributed variation in worm length throughout the experiments. The

consistancy of the results suggests that the size of the worms did not have a significant effect.

By altering the feeding period and by starving the carp, it has been demonstrated that the described patterns of movement by <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> were associated with the passage of food through the intestine. The movement of <u>H</u>. <u>diminuta</u> in the rat intestine are also reported to be related to the feeding of the host (e.g. Read and Kilejian, 1969; Hopkins, 1970; Bailey, 1971), however it differs in that the scolex also shows a cyclical variation in the position of attachment.

It was noted that the infected fish showed a peak in activity when fed. It was possible that mechanical stimulation resulting from this activity could account for the observed worm movements. The peak activity was also induced in the starved control carp when other fish in the aquarium room were fed, however no resultant contraction of the strobila was observed, indicating that activity alone could not cause the observed movements.

In the present investigation no further research was carried out aimed at determining the exact stimulus (or stimuli) required to produce the observed movements of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. Research centered around <u>H. diminuta</u>, by Metrick and his colleagues (see introduction) indicates that serotonin plays an important part in controlling intestinal migration. It would be interesting to repeat the experiments of Mettrick and Cho (1981b) (aimed at determining the effects of serotonin on worm migration), and of Mettrick and Cho (1982) (aimed at blocking the natural release of serotonin in the intestine using inhibitors) using <u>B. acheilognathi</u> in the <u>C. carpio</u> intestine in order to determine if serotonin was responsible for the
movements described in this investigation. Davydov <u>et al</u>. (1974) noted that the glycogen content of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> could be altered using serotonin, and Teremina (1983) found serotonin in the tissues of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> but no workers have examined its effect on motility.

Throughout this investigation the infected <u>C. carpio</u> were subject to artificial feeding regimes, with food being available only at specified times. Would the extension and contraction of the strobila occur if the <u>C. carpio</u> were fed <u>ad libitum</u>? Bailey (1971) examined the migrational activity of <u>H. diminuta</u> in rats fed <u>ad</u> <u>libitum</u> and concluded that the worms still showed the migrations because of the increased feeding activity of the hosts during the period from 1400 hours until dawn (08.00 hours). A similar situation would probably occur in the <u>C. carpio</u> with peak feeding activity, and therefore the worms at their most anterior position at dawn and dusk.

Egg release by B. acheilognathi

Egg release by <u>B.</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> shows a cyclical pattern. The frequency of this pattern appears to be related to the frequency at which the fish were fed (Figs. 5a and b).

By utilising the rate at which food passes along the intestine (Fig. 2) it is possible to determine the position of the intestinal material containing a high egg density at the time at which the <u>C.</u> <u>carpio</u> were fed. Thus, when the <u>C. carpio</u> were fed at 24 hour periods the peak faecal egg counts were recorded 1-4 hours post feeding. This intestinal material would have been 60-80% of the way along the intestine at the time of feeding. Similarly when the <u>C.</u> <u>carpio</u> were fed at 12 hour periods, the peak faecal egg counts

occurred 6-10 hours post feeding. This intestinal material would have been 40-60% of the way along the intestine at the time of feeding. If these positions are compared with the position occupied by the mature proglottides at the time of feeding (Table 1) they can be seen to coincide.

The results seem to indicate that the peak egg release from the mature proglotiddes occurs at the time when food enters the intestine. Associated with the entry of food into the intestine is the rapid contraction of the strobila which might be expected to cause pressure to be exerted in the uterus within each proglottid resulting in the expulsion of eggs. Boyce (1974) was also of the opinion that eggs would be expelled from the strobila (of <u>Eubothrium salvelini</u>) under the pressure resulting from contortions of the strobila (possibly serotonin) may also initiate the release of eggs from the uterus.

Since the presence of food in the intestine, serotonin levels and strobila contraction are closely associated, it is difficult to distinguish the causal factor of egg release. Further work in this area is obviously necessary.

Conclusions

The strobila of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> was observed to undergo a cyclical pattern of contraction and extension within the host intestine. The frequency of this behaviour was associated with the feeding behaviour of <u>C. carpio</u> host. The strobila contracted to its most anterior position 10 minutes after food had entered the intestine, this was followed by a linear extension as the food moved along the intestine. 24 hours post feeding the bulk of the food material had been expelled from the intestine, and the strobila of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> was fully extended. No significant variation in the scolex position was observed.

Egg release by <u>B. acheilognathi</u> was also associated with the entry of food into the intestine. It is suggested that the contraction of the strobila causes pressure to be exerted on the uterus resulting in the expulsion of the eggs.

References.

- Allee, W. C.; Emerson, A. E.; Park, O.; Park, T.; Schmidt, K. P. (1949) Principales of Animal Ecology. Philidelphia and London, W. P. Saunders Co.
- Arai, H. P. (1980) Migratory activity and related phenomena in <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u>. In 'Biology of the tapeworm <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u>'. Arai, H. P. ed. Academic Press, London and New York. pp 615-637.
- Bailey, G. N. A. (1971) <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u>: circadian rhythm in movement and body length in the rat. Experimental Parasitology 29, 285-291.
- Boyce, N. P. J. (1974) Biology of <u>Eubothrium salvelini</u> (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea), a parasite of juvenille sockeye salmon (<u>Onchorynchus nerka</u>) of Babine Lake, British Columbia. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 31, 1735-1742.
- Braten, T. and Hopkins, C. A. (1969) The migration of <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> in the rats intestine during normal development and following surgical transplantation. Parasitology 59, 891-905.
- Chandler, A. C. (1939) The effects of numbers and age of worms on development of primary and secondary infections with <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u> in rats, and an investigation into the true nature of 'premunition' in tapeworm infections. American Journal of Hygiene 29, 105-114.
- Chappel, L. H.; Arai, H. P; Dike, S. C; Read, C. P. (1970) Circadian migration of <u>Hymenolepis</u> (Cestoda) in the intestine - I. Observations on <u>H. diminuta</u> in the rat.

Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology 34, 31-46.

- Cho, C. H. and Mettrick, D. F. (1982) Circadian variation in the distribution of <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> (Cestoda) and 5hydroxytryptamine levels in the gastro-intestinal tract of the laboratory rat. Parasitology 84, 431-444.
- Crompton, D. W. T. (1973) The sites occupied by some parasitic helminths in the alimentary tract of vertebrates. Biological Reviews 48, 27-83.
- Davydov, O. N.; Strazhnik, L. V.; Kurovs'ka, L. Ya. (1974) Effects of serotonin on certain aspects of carbohydrate metabolism in <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u>. Dopovidi Akademi Nauk Ukrains'koi RSR,B (Geologiya Geofizika, Khimiya ta Biologiya) 9, 853-855. (In Russian).
- Dukes, D. C. and Davidson, L. (1968) Some factors affecting the output of schistosome ova in the urine. Central African Journal of Medicine 14, 115-122.
- Harker, J. E. (1958) Diurnal rhythms in the animal kingdom. Biological Reviews 33, 1-52.
- Hawking, F. (1975) Circadian and other rhythms of parasites. Advances in Parasitology 13, 123-182.
- Heape, W. (1931) Emigration, migration and nomadism. Cambridge. W. Heffer and Sons Ltd.
- Holmes, J. C. (1972) Site selection by parasitic helminths: interspecific interactions, site segregation and their importance to the development of helminth communities. Canadian Journal of Zoology 51, 333-347.
- Hopkins, C. A. (1969) The influence of dietary methionine on the amino acid pool of <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> in the rats

intestine. Parasitology 59, 407-427.

- Hopkins, C. A. (1970) Diurnal movement of <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> in the rat. Parasitology 60, 255-271.
- Hopkins, C. A. and Allen, L. M. (1979) <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u>: the role of the tail in determining the position of the worm in the intestine of the rat. Parasitology 79, 401-410.
- Johnston, J. M. (1967) The egg laying behaviour of <u>Phyllodistomum</u> <u>folium in vivo</u> and under experimental conditions. Parasitology 57, 13P.
- MacKenzie, K. and Gibson, D. I. (1970) Ecological studies of some parasites of plaice, <u>Pleuronectes platessa</u> L. and flounder, <u>Platichthys flesus</u> (L.). Symposium of the British Society of Parasitology 8, 1-42.
- Mettrick, D. F. (1971a) <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u>: pH changes in rat intestinal contents and worm migration. Experimental Parasitology 29, 386-401.
- Mettrick, D. F. (1971b) <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u>: the microbial fauna, nutritional gradients and physio-chemical characteristics of the small intestine of uninfected and parasitized rats. Canadian Journal of Physiology and Pharmacology 49, 972-984.
- Mettrick, D. F. (1971c) Effect of host dietry constituents on intestinal pH and the migrational behaviour of the rat tapeworm <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u>. Canadian Journal of Zoology 49, 1513-1525.
- Mettrick, D. F. (1972) Changes in the distribution and chemical of <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u>, and in the intestinal nutritional gradients of uninfected and parasitized rats following a glucose meal. Journal of Helminthology 46, 407-429.

- Mettrick, D. F. (1973) Competition for ingested nutrients between the tapeworm <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u> and the rat host. Canadian Journal of Public Health 64, 70-82.
- Mettrick, D. F. (1975) Correlations between amino acid pools of <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> and the rat intestine. Canadian Journal of Zoology 53, 320-331.
- Mettrick, D. F. and Cho, C. H. (1981a) <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u>: effect of electrical vagal stimulation on worm migration. Journal of Parasitology 67, 386-390.
- Mettrick, D. F. and Cho, C. H. (1981b) Migration of <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> (Cestoda) and changes in 5-HT (serotonin) levels in the rat host following parental and oral 5-HT administration. Canadian Journal of Physiology and Pharmacology 59, 281-286.
- Mettrick, D. F. and Cho, C. H. (1982) Changes in tissue and intestinal serotonin (5-HT) levels in the laboratory rat following feeding, and the effect of 5-HT inhibitors on the migratory response of <u>Hymenolepis diminuta</u> (Cestoda). Canadian Journal of Zoology 60, 790-797.
- Mettrick, D. F. and Podesta, R. B. (1974) Ecological and physiological aspects of helminth-host interactions in the mamalian gastrointestinal canal. Advances in Parasitology 13, 183-278.
- Nybelin, O. (1922) Anatomisch-systematischen Studien ueber Pseudophyllidien. Goteborgs Kgl. Vetenskapsakad. Handl. 26. 169-211. (Cited Wardle and McLeod, 1952).
- Phillipson, R. F. (1973) Intermittent egg production by Aspiculuris tetraptera in mice. Parasitology 62, vii.

- Read, C. P. and Kilejian, A. Z. (1969) Circadian migratory behaviour of a cestode symbiote in the rat host. Journal of Parasitology 55, 574-578.
- Rozin, P. and Meyer, J. (1961) Regulation of food intake in the goldfish. American Journal of Physiology 201, 968-974.
- Terening, N. B. (1983) Serotonin and dopamine in the tissues of pseudophyllidean cestodes. Zhurnal Evolyutsionnoi Biokhimii Fiziologii 19, 302-304. (In Russian).
- Wardle, R. A. and McLeod, J. A. (1952) The zoology of tapeworms. University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis.
- Williams, H. H.; McVicar, A. H.; Ralph, R. (1970) The alimentary canal of fish as an environment for helminth parasites. Symposium of the British Society for Parasitology 8, 43-77.

Part III:

The Anthelmintic Treatment of Bothriocephalus

acheilognathi

Introduction.

The pathological effects of <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> on it's cyprinid definitive host have been well documented. In intensive and semi-intensive cyprinid pond culture systems in Europe, U.S.S.R. and the Far East the prevalence of infection may reach 100%, with up to 467 worms per fish being recorded (eg. Liao & Shih, 1956; Körting, 1974). At low levels of infection (1-7 B.<u>acheilognathi</u>) no effects on the health and metabolic activity of the fish were apparent (Par, 1978). However, heavy infestations may cause intestinal blockage, inflammation and perforation of the intestine wall, generalized emaciation, reduced growth rates and death (Liao & Shih, 1956; Bauer <u>et al.</u>, 1969; Edwards & Hine, 1974; McDaniel, 1979; Scott & Grizzle, 1979; Hoffman, 1980).

In areas where it has become established <u>B. acheilognathi</u> has caused severe economic losses. For example in the German Democratic Republic, where movement of infected fishes is restricted, and extensive prophylactic measures are practised, 14.5% of the <u>Cyprinus</u> <u>carpio</u> produced are infected with <u>B. acheilonathi</u>; the average weight of infected fishes is 10% lower than in uninfected individuals; 1-1.5% of the <u>C. carpio</u> are lost as a result of bothriocephaliasis; and the cost of feeding infected fishes is increased by 5% compared with uninfected fishes (Wierowski, 1984).

The economic importance of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> has resulted in considerable research being aimed at discovering a suitable anthelmintic. A wide range of substances have been utilised to treat infected fishes. These range from natural plant products, for example ground coniferous needles (Klenov, 1969), tobacco dust (Avdos'ev, 1973) and Lupin seed (Balatskii <u>et al.</u>, 1976), through a

variety of anthelmintics including devermin (eg Molnar, 1970), 1976 Phensal (eg Muzikovski, 1971) and Yomesan (eg Fijan <u>et al.</u>). The effectiveness of these anthelmintics, and many others, varies considerably depending on the circumstances of their use. In addition many (eg Mebendazole, (Andrews, 1983 Yorkshire Water Authority report); Mansonil and Depifen, (Fijan <u>et al.</u>, 1976); Yomesan, (Jezek, 1979)) are toxic to the fish at the concentrations necessary for successful treatment.

Praziquantel (Droncit, Bayer), a pyrazinoisoquinoline derivative, has a very broad spectrum of activity against parasitic cestodes and trematodes, and has been extensively used for the 1983 treatment of human schistosomiasis (Andrews et al.). The highly efficacious nature of praziquantel, together with the tol eration shown to it by fishes make it an ideal anthelmintic for the control of many fish parasites. Studies have shown it to be effective against Diplostomum spatheceum in Salmo gairdneri (Bylund and Sumari, 1981); Valipora campylancristrota in Cyprinus carpio (Suvorov, 1981); Bunodera lucioperca in Perca fluviatilis, Eubothrium rugosum in Lota lota, Ligula intestinalis in Rutilus rutilus and Sanguinicola inermis in Cyprinus carpio (cited Andrews et al., 1983; Proteocephalus osculatus in Siluris glanis and Bothriocephalus acheilognathi in Ctenopharyngodon idella (Andrews and Riley, 1982).

In this part of the thesis the use of praziquantel for the control of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> will be examined. The <u>in vitro</u> effect of praziquantel on <u>B. acheilognathi</u> is investigated in chapter 5 using scanning and transmission electron microscopy. Chapter 6 describes how praziquantel was used in a field situation to treat a batch of 30,000 newly imported <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> which were

found to be infected with <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. This latter work was carried out in conjunction with Dr. C. Andrews (Yorkshire Water Authority) and Mr K. Ryder (Humberside Fisheries).

References.

- Andrews, C. and Riley, A. (1982) Anthelmintic treatment of fish via stomach tube. Fisheries Management 13, 83-84.
- Andrews, P.; Thomas, H.; Pohlke, R.; Seubert, J. (1983) Praziquantel. Medicinal Research Reviews 3, 147-200.
- Avdos'ev, B. S. (1973) The use of tobacco dust in the control of <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> infection in carp.Rybnoe Khozyaistvo, Kiev 17, 109-118. (In Russian).
- Balatskii, K.P.; Ivasik, V. M.; Boyarchuk, N. L.; Novasad, S. I. (1976) <u>Bothriocephalus</u> in carp. Veterinariya, Moskow, 10, 55. (In Russian).
- Bauer, O. N.; Musselius, V. A.; Strelkov, Yu. A. (1969) Diseases of Pond Fish. Isreal Programme for Scientific Translations, Jerusalem (1973) 219pp.
- Bylund, G. and Sumari, O. (1981) Laboratory tests with droncit against diplostomiasis in rainbow trout, <u>Salmo</u> <u>gairdneri</u> Richardson. Journal of Fish Diseases 4, 259-264.
- Edwards, D. J. and Hine, P. M. (1974) Introduction, preliminary handling an diseases of grass carp in New Zealand. New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research 8, 441-454.
- Fijan, N.; Kezic, N.; Teskeredzic, E.; Kajgana, L.; (1976) Treatment of carp bothriocephaliasis. Veterinarski Arhiv 46, 245-252. (In Russian).
- Hoffman, G. L. (1980) Asian tapeworm, <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> Yamaguti, 1934, in North America. Fisch und Umwelt 8, 69-75.

Jezek, D. A. (1979) Evaluation of five chemotheraputics as

potential anthelmintics against <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> in Golden Shiners. MSc. Thesis Auburn University.

- Klenov, A. P. (1969) Coniferous needles tested against <u>Bothriocephalus</u> in grass carp. Veterinariya. Moskow 46, 56-57. (In Russian).
- Körting, W. (1974) Bothriocephalosis of the carp. Veterinary Medical Review 2, 165-171.
- Liao, H.-L. and Shih, L.-C. (1956) Contribution to the biology and control of <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> Yeh, a tapeworm parasite of the young grass carp (<u>Ctenopharyngodon idellus</u> C and V). Acta Hydrobiologica Sinica 2, 129-185. (In Chinese).
- McDaniel, D. (1979) Procedures for the detection and identification of certain fish pathogens. American Fisheries Society (Fish Health Section) Bethesda, Maryland 118pp.
- Molnár, K. (1970) An atempt to trear fish bothriocephaliasis with devermin. Toxicity for the host and anti-parasitic effect. Acta Veterinariya Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae 20, 325-331.
- Muzikovskii, A. M. (1971) Phenesal against <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>gowkongensis</u> infection in carp. Trudy Vsesoyuznogo Nauchno-Issledovatel'skogo Instituta Prudovogo Rybno Khozyaistva (Voprozy prudovogo rybovodstva) 18, 146-148. (In Russian).
- Par, O. (1978) Effect of low intensity infections with the cestode <u>Bothriocephalus Gowkongensis</u> on the condition and physiological indications of the state of health of carp. Buletin V.U.H.R. Vodnany, C.S.S.R. 14, 26-33.

- Scott, A. L. and Grizzle, J. M. (1979) Pathology of cyprinid fishes caused by <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955 (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea). Journal of Fish Diseases 2, 69-73.
- Suvorov, A.A. (1981) Testing of some anthelmintics against <u>Valipora</u> infection in pond fish. Byulleten Vsesoyuznogo Instituta Eksperimental' noi Veterinarii 41, 24-25.

Chapter 5:

The effect of praziquantel on <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi in vitro</u>.

...

.

Introduction.

Praziquantel (<u>Droncit</u>, Bayer) has been shown to be an effective anthelmintic against <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> in naturally infected <u>Ctenopharyngodon</u> <u>idella</u> (Andrews and Riley, 1982; see Chapter 6).

Although there have been numerous studies on the effects of praziquantel on the morphology of various cestodes and trematodes of medical and veterinary importance (eg Andrews and Thomas, 1979; Becker <u>et al.</u>, 1980, 1981; Conder <u>et al.</u>, 1981; Coles, 1979) none have described the effects on the parasites of fishes. The present study was designed to study the <u>in vitro</u> effects on the fine structure of the integument of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> using scanning and transmission electron microscopy.

Materials and Methods

Immature and mature <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> (specimens) were obtained from 0+ grass carp (<u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u>). The parasites, individually and attached to the intestinal mucosa, were exposed for 5, 15 and 60 minutes to concentrations of 0 (control), 0.1, 1.0 10 and 100 ug praziguantel per ml of 0.9% saline at 18°C.

For scanning electron microscopy the worms were fixed in a 4% formaldehyde solution for 1 hour, washed twice in distilled water and dehydrated using an ethanol series. The worms were treated in a Polaron E3000 critical point drier, followed by cooling with 60% gold palladium using a Polaron E5100 sputter coater and viewed using a Philips 501B scanning electron microscope.

Worms to be studied using the transmission electron microscope were fixed for 5 hrs in a 2% paraformaldehyde and 2.5% gluteraldehyde solution in 0.1M sodium cacodylate buffer, adjusted to a pH of 7.2 using 0.1 m HCL. Calcium chloride was added to the buffer to give a final concentration of 2.5 mM to reduce membrane swelling. The worms were washed twice, in 0.1 M sodium cacodylate buffer. pH 7.2; cut into sections of approximately 2 proglottides. and post-fixed for 3 hours in 1% osmium tetroxide in a sodium cacodylate buffer, pH 7.2. After washing in a cacodylate buffer. the worms were dehydrated in an ethanol series, and gradually infiltrated with a standard mixture of spur low epoxy resin. The specimens were cured for 16 hours at 60°C. 90 nm sections were cut using a Reichert OMU3 ultramicrotome and stained using saturated uranyl acetate in 50% ethanol for 20 minutes and lead citrate for 5 minutes at 20°C. Sodium hydroxide crystals were added to the lead citrate to prevent lead carbonate formation. The sections were

washed in 0.02 M sodium hydroxide and distilled water; and viewed using a Kratos Conneth 500 transmission electron microscope (Smith 1980).

Results.

The tapeworms treated with 1.0, 10.0 and 100 ug praziquantel per ml saline contracted immediately upon being placed in the drug solution, the intensity of the response increased with the concentration of the drug. After 15 minutes the worms placed in a 0.1 ugml solution showed areas of contraction and relaxation along the strobila. After 24 hours exposure to the drug solutions, the worms were still attached to the intestine, and showed a weak response when touched. Control worms were still active but had released their hold on the intestine.

Scanning electron microscopy:

Treated and untreated worms, as observed by the scanning electron microscope are shown in figures (1-6). The tegument of the control worms was uniformly covered by microtriches. Dome shaped tumuli were evenly spaced over the scolex, but decreased posteriorly, being absent from mature and gravid proglottides (Fig. 2). Adjacent proglottides were a similar size and shape (Fig. 1).

Worms exposed to 0.1 ug praziquantel per ml saline were morphologically identical with the control after 5 and 15 minutes.

After 60 minutes exposure occasional small 'blebs' (1-10 ug) were apparent on the outer surface of the bothria, and on proglottide margins in the neck region.

At a praziquantel concentration of 1.0 ugml the 'blebs' were more numerous particularly on the scolex, and appeared after only 5 minutes exposure (Fig. 3). Increased exposure to the drug resulted in many of the blebs bursting (Fig. 4). The mature proglottides were swollen after 15 and 60 minutes exposure (Fig. 5).

Worms exposed to 10 ug praziquantel per ml saline solution

Legends

Figure 1: Mature proglottides from <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> incubated in the control solution (0.9% saline) for 15 minutes. Viewed using a scanning electron microscope. Marker = 100 um.

Figure 2: S.E.M. of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> tegument from the neck region incubated in the control solution for 60 minutes. Note microtriches (M) and tumuli (T). Marker = 1 u.

Figure 3-4: S.E.M. of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> tegument from the neck region exposed to a solution of 1.0 ug praziquantel per ml 0.9% saline. Fig. 4: Incubated for 5 minutes. Fig. 5: Incubated for 15 minutes. Marker = 10 um.

Figure 5: S.E.M. of swollen mature proglottides from <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> incubated in 1.0 ug praziquantel per ml 0.9% saline for 60 minutes. Marker = 100 um.

Figure 6: S.E.M. of large swelling on mature proglottide of <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> incubated in 10 ug praziquantel per ml 0.9% saline for 60 minutes. Marker = 10 um.

Figure 7: Transmission electron micrograph (T.E.M.) of the tegument in the neck region of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> incubated in the control solution for 15 minutes. Note Microtriches (M) Distal cytoplasm (DC) Basal layer (BL) and circular musculature (CM). x5000

Figure 8: T.E.M. of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> tegument from the neck region incubated for 5 minutes in 1.0 ug praziquantels per ml 0.9% saline. Note vacuolisation (V) and ballooning of tegument (B). x3000.

















showed the most intense reaction. Large areas of the scolex were covered in 'blebs'(1 u-10 u diameter) after only 5 minutes exposure. Swelling and distortion of the mature proglottides occurred after 15 minutes. Large vacuoles (280 u x 140 u) formed on some mature proglottides after 1 hour (Fig. 6).

Exposure to 100 ug ml⁻¹ praziquantel solution resulted in fewer blebs on the scolex, but a higher density on the neck region of the strobila. Mature segments were swollen.

Transmission electron microscopy:

The structure of the tegument of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> is similar to that described for other cestodes (e.g. Lumsden, 1966; Becker <u>et</u> <u>al.</u>, 1980) and has been described in detail by Granath <u>et al</u>. (1983). The distal cytoplasm is covered in numerous 1-2 um microtriches, and is rich in mitochondria and vessicles. The basal lamina separates the muscle layer from the distal cytoplasm (Fig. 7).

Examination of the 'blebs' observed using the scanning electron microscope reveals them to be continuous with the distal cytoplasm. The 'blebs' diameter 1-10 um were filled with cytoplasm and granules, indicating that leakage of the tegument had occurred (Fig. 8).

Vacuoles (2-5 u diameter) were apparent after 15 minutes in the distal cytoplasm of worms exposed to a 1.0 ugml or greater praziquantel solution. After 1 hour these vacuoles were larger (2-10 u diameter) and more extensive. Cellular leakage into the vacuoles had occurred (Fig. 8). The microtriches appear to be unaffected by the drug.

Discussion

The effect of praziquantel on the tegument of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> is similar to that described for other cestode species (e.g. Conder <u>et al.</u>, 1981; Becker <u>et al.</u>, 1980, 1981).

Praziquantel concentrations as low as 0.001 ugml⁻¹ have been shown to affect adult hymenolepid and echinococcus adult cestodes, while concentrations of 0.01 ugml⁻¹ can cause contraction and paralysis (Andrews & Thomas, 1979). <u>B. acheilognathi</u> appeared to show a greater degree of tolerance to the drug, a concentration of 0.1 ugml⁻¹ for 15 minutes or 1 ugml⁻¹ for 5 seconds being required to produce contraction. Paralysis of the strobila did not occur in the drug concentrations tested. Previous <u>in vitro</u> studies were conducted with mammalian cestodes (e.g. Becker <u>et al</u>., 1980, 1981) at a temperature of 37°C. The lower temperature (18°C) employed in this study may explain the apparent reduced sensitivity.

A similar reduced succeptibility to praziquantel was observed with <u>Diphyllobothrium latum</u> larvae and adults treated <u>in vitro</u> (Bylund <u>et al.</u>, 1977). Although the mode of action of praziquantel is poorly understood, Andrews <u>et al.</u> (1983) have suggested that one pre-requisite for its action is the presence of a syncitial tegument such as that found in many cestodes and trematodes. The observed reduction in succeptibility by the two pseudophyllidean cestodes may therefore be a result of the integument being slightly different to that possesed by other cestodes.

Considerable variation in the effect of the drug occurred along the length of the worm. The scolex and neck region of the tegument showed the characteristic ballooning and vacuolization, previously recorded in a number of cestode species (Andrews <u>et al.</u>, 1983).

Becker <u>et al</u>. (1981) suggest that this is a result of the high metabolic activity in this area. Unlike other cestodes, the mature proglottides of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> were affected by praziquantel being grossly distorted with occasional large swellings. This response resulted in the mass expulsion of eggs, which hatched normally to produce viable coracidia. Control worms released very few eggs. The non ovicidal activity of praziquantel has previously been recorded for <u>Echinococcus granulosus</u> (Thakur <u>et al</u>., 1979) and stresses the need for care when disposing of water and faeces after treatment.

The <u>in vivo</u> studies of Andrews and Riley (1981) and in chapter 6 found praziquantel to be completely effective in eliminating <u>B</u>. <u>acheilognathi</u> from the fish host. It is interesting to note that in the present study <u>in vitro</u> exposure of the worms to praziquantel concentrations of up to 100 ugml⁻¹ for 24 hours failed to kill the worms or cause them to release their hold on the intestine. Further <u>in vivo</u> studies have shown that expulsion of the worms from the gut occurs approximately 72 hours after treatment. In view of the rapid elimination of praziquantel from the body (Steiner and Garbe, 1976, Andrews & Thomas, 1979) it is probable that some other factor, such as the action of the host digestive enzymes on the damaged tegument, and the peristatic action of the intestine contributes to the expulsion of the worms from the gut.

References.

- Andrews, C. and Riley, A.(1982) Anthelmintic treatment of fish via stomach tube. Fisheries Management 13, 83-84.
- Andrews, P. and Thomas, H. (1979) The effect of Praziquantel on <u>Hymenolepis</u> <u>diminuta</u> <u>in</u> <u>vitro</u>. Tropenmedezine und Parasitologie 30, 391-400.
- Andrews, P.; Thomas, H.; Pohlke, R.; Seubert, J. (1983) Praziquantel. Medical Research Reviews 3, 147-200.
- Becker, B.; Mehlhorn, H.; Andrews, P.; Thomas, H. (1980) Scanning and transmission electron microscope studies on the efficacy of praziquantel on <u>Hymenolepis nana</u> (Cestoda) <u>in</u> <u>vitro</u>. Zeitschrifte fur Parasitenkunde 61, 121-133.
- Becker, B.; Mehlhorn, H.; Andrews, P.; Thomas, H. (1981) Ultrastructural investigations on the effect of praziquantel on the tegument of five species of Cestodes. Zeitschrifte fur Parasitenkunde 64, 257-269.
- Bylund, G.; Bang, B.; Wikgren, K. (1977) Tests with a new comround (Praziquantel) against <u>Diphyllobothrium</u> <u>latum</u>. Journal of Helminthology 51, 115-119.
- Coles, G. C. (1979) The effect of praziquantel on <u>Schistosoma</u> mansoni. Journal of Helminthology 53, 31-33.
- Conder, G. A.; Marchiondo, A. A.; Andersen, F. L. (1981) Effect of praziquantel on adult <u>Echinococcus granulosus in vitro</u>: Scanning electron microscopy. Zeitschrifte fur Parasitenkunde 66, 191-199.
- Granath, W. O. Jr.; Lewis, J. C.; Esch, G. W. (1983) An ultrastructural examination of the scolex and tegument of Bothriocephalus <u>acheilognathi</u> (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea).

Transactions of the American Microscopical Society 102, 240-250.

- Lumsden, R. D. (1966) Cytological studies on the absorptive surfaces of cestodes 1. The fine structure of the strobilar integument. Zeitschrifte für Parasitenkunde 27, 355-382.
- Smith, J. (1980) An ultrastructural study of embryos, early larvae and embryonic cells of the South African Clawed Toad, Xenopus laevis. M.Sc. thesis, University of Liverpool.
- Steiner, K. and Garbe, A. (1976) The fate of praziquantel in the organism. II Distribution in rats. European Journal of Drug Metabolism and Pharmacokinetics 2, 97-106.
- Thakur, A. S.; Prezioso, U.; Marchevsky, N. (1979) <u>Echinococcus</u> <u>granulosus</u>: ovicidal activity of praziquantel and bunamidine hydrochloride. Experimental Parasitology 47, 131-133.

Chapter 6:

The control of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> <u>acheilognathi</u> in Ctenopharyngodon <u>idella</u> using praziquantel under field conditions.

Introduction.

In November, 1982 approximately 30,000 0+ <u>Ctenopharyngodon</u> <u>idella</u> (length 10-16cm, weight approximately 20g each) were imported into the Yorkshire Water Authority region from a Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food approved scource in Yugoslavia. Examination of the <u>C. idella</u> revealed that 50-80% were infected with Bothriocephalus <u>acheilognathi</u>, with 1-30 worms per fish.

<u>B. acheilognathi</u> was considered to be a potentially dangerous pathogen, therefore movements of the <u>C. idella</u> were prevented by the Yorkshire Water Authority under section 30 of the 1975 Salmon and Freshwater Fisheries Act 1975. Because of their high value it was necessary to treat the fishes in order to remove the <u>B.</u> acheilognathi.

In order to select an anthelmintic which could be used to treat the <u>C. idella</u> trials were carried out in the laboratory by C. Andrews, using three anthelmintics: mebendazole (<u>Mebenvet</u>, crown chemicals), niclosamide (<u>Mansonil</u>, Bayer) and praziquantel (<u>Droncit</u>, Bayer). The anthelmintics were suspended in 0.9% saline and administered as a single dose via stomach tube to groups of 10 fishes maintained at $18-20^{\circ}$ C (after Andrews and Riley, 1982).

At dose rates of 35-500 mg kg body weight⁻¹ mebendazole was ineffective at removing the <u>B. acheilognathi</u>, and in addition, at dose rates of 50 mg kg body weight⁻¹ (and above) there were signs of toxic effects on the fish. Niclosamide, at a dose rate of 150 mg kg body weight⁻¹, did not achieve satisfactiry control and there were also signs of toxic effects on the fish. At dose rates of 35-100 mg kg body weight⁻¹ praziquantel was completely successful at eliminating the tapeworm infestation. There were no signs of toxic

effects on the fish, and all of the worms passed out of the gut within 7 days.

In view of these results, and the large number of fish to be treated it was decided to use praziquantel, and to administer it in the form of a medicated feed.

Methods and Results

The infected <u>C. idella</u> were divided into two batches of approximately 15,000 fishes.

The first batch of fishes were netted from an outside pond (temperature 4° C), and placed into an indoor recirculating system consisting of eight 1600 litre fibreglass tanks and a large biological filter. The temperature was increased at the rate of 2^o C day⁻¹ up to 24°C. At this temperature it was hoped that the fishes would feed actively on the medicated feed, and that the praziquantel would be as effective as in the laboratory trials.

The <u>C. idella</u> were offered trout pellets (<u>Fingerling 1</u>, B.P. nutrition) for several days, during which time any lethargic or moribund (and hence non-feeding) fish were removed and destroyed. As soon as the fishes were feeding well, they were starved for 3 days and then offered anthelmintic-medicated feed. To help ensure that all the fishes had access to the feed, automatic feeders were used to provide a 2 minute feed every 30 minutes during daylight hours. The medicated feed was prepared by binding praziquantel powder (obtained from Bayer AG.) to the pellets using a small quantity of vegetable oil. Sufficient praziquantel powder was added to the three days ration to ach**e**ive a dose rate (over the 3-day period) of 125 mg kg body weight⁻¹.

Nine days after the end of the treatment period 300 C. idella(ie sufficient to provide a 95% chance of detecting a 1% level of infection (Ossiander and Wedemeyer, 1973)) were examined for the presence of <u>B. acheilognathi</u>. Non were found to harbour intestinal tapeworms.

The temperature in the recirculating system was allowed to cool at the rat e of $2^{\circ}C$ day⁻¹ to ambient (winter) temperatures, and the

fishes were released into a previously disinfected pond.

The second batch of fishes were treated in the same manner, exept that sufficient praziquantel was used to acheive a dose rate of 105 mg kg body weight⁻¹ over the 3 day period.

Discussion.

The dose rates of praziquantel employed in this treatment were approximateley 3 times greater than the minimum quantity found to be effective under the laboratory trials, and those used to control other cestodes (reviewed by Andrews <u>et al.</u>, 1983). This was to allow for a certain amount of anthelmintic wastage (bearing in mind the method of administration), and to ensure that the fishes which were feeding only occasionally (probably the most heavily infected) received sufficient praziquantel to eliminate the parasite. Wastage was further reduced by the use of small but frequent feeds to ensure that the pellets were consumed rapidly, the acclimation of the <u>C.</u> <u>idella</u> to the indoor tanks and to the pelleted food, and the 3 day starvation period prior to treatment.

The removal of any obviously non-feeding fishes was important, as the <u>B. acheilognathi</u> in these fishes would not have been eliminated by the anthelmintic. Approximately 500 non-feeding fishes were removed. They were particularly obvious because of their dark colouration and because they congregated around the inlet pipes.

The ponds which contained the infected <u>C. idella</u> prior to treatment were drained, limed and left dry over the winter period to kill any eggs or infected copepods which may have been present (eg Babaev and Shcherbakova, 1963; Mitchell and Hoffman, 1980). Prior to treatment these ponds had been wired to prevent the transmission of the parasite to adjacent ponds via bird predation (Prigili, 1974, 1975).

Praziquantel is obviously completely successful at eliminating B. acheilognathi. Unfortunately, because of the high cost of

praziquantel and other proven anthelmintics, they are often not used by European cyprinid culturists. Instead cheaper, less effective drugs are used to reduce the worm burden, so preventing exessive growth reduction and death (K. Ryder pers.comm.). Over a short period of time these measures will be economically beneficial. However as they do not eliminate <u>B. acheilognathi</u>, recurrence of the infection at a later date, or in another locality may occur.

In the present situation treatment of the fishes was facilitated by the use of a large recirculating unit. However the cost of running this, together with the cost of the praziquantel and the labour, would have been prohibitively high if less valuable fishes had been infected. In a number of instances in the British Isles where <u>B. acheilognathi</u> has been diagnosed in <u>Cyprinus carpio</u> fry it has been economically beneficial to kill the fishes rather than treat the parasite.

Because of the high cost of effective treatment it is important that <u>B. acheilognathi</u> be prevented from entering the British Isles. In an attempt to prevent the introduction of novel, fish pathogens such as <u>B. acheilognathi</u> into the British Isles there is legislation under the Diseases of Fish Acts, 1937 and 1983 to control the importation of freshwater fishes and their eggs. However fishes for ornamental purposes are imported with no real restrictions. Such imports may include fish species which are, in theory, subject to the above mentioned legislative controls, for example <u>Tinca tinca</u>, <u>Scardinius erythrophthalmus</u> and <u>Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> (Andrews, 1984). On a number of occasions this has resulted in ornamental fishes such as golden orfe (<u>Leuciscus idus</u>) and Koi carp (<u>Cyprinus</u> <u>carpio</u>) which were infected with <u>B. acheilognathi</u> being introduced into British fish farms (Andrews, 1984; personal observations). The

effluent from these farms, fishes which escape and fishes kept on the same farms for restocking purposes could all result in the release of <u>B. acheilognathi</u> into British waters.

Conclusions

Praziquantel administered as a medicated feed is effective at eliminating <u>Bothriocephalus acheilognathi</u> from <u>Ctenopharyngodon</u> <u>idella</u> at dose rates of 105 and 125 mg kg body weight⁻¹. For completely successful treatment it was necessary to ensure that all of the fishes consumed sufficient quantities of the drug. This was acheived by using very high dose rates, removing non-feeding fishes, acclimation of the fishes to a pelleted food and raised temperatures, feeding small quantities of food frequently and by starving the fishes for 3 days prior to treatment.
References.

- Andrews, C. (1984) The economic importance and control of the infectious diseases of freshwater fish, with special reference to fish farming, angling and ornamental fish keeping in the British Isles. Paper presented at the fourth European Multicolloquium of Parasitology, Izmir Turkey, 14-19th October, 1984.
- Andrews, C. and Riley, A. (1982) Anthelmintic treatment of fish via stomach tube. Fisheries Management 13, 83-84.
- Andrews, P.; Thomas, H.; Pohlke, R,; Seubert, J. (1983) Praziquantel. Medicinal Research Reviews 3, 147-200.
- Babaev, B. and Shcherbakova, A. I. (1963) The control of <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis from Ctenopharyngodon idella</u> (Vallencienne). Izvestiya Akademii Nauk Turkmenskoi SSR, Seriya Biologicheskikh Nauk 4, 86-87. (In Russian).
- Ossiander, F. J. and Wedemeyer, G. (1973) Computer program for sample sizes required to determine disease incidence in fish populations. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 30, 1383-1384.
- Prigili, M. (1974) Data on the spreading of <u>Bothriocephalus</u> gowkongensis. Halaszat 20, 180.
- Prigili, M. (1975) The role of water birds in spreading <u>Bothriocephalus gowkongensis</u> Yeh, 1955 (Cestoda). Parasitologica Hungarica 8, 61-62.

176

Appendix. Publications.

A scanning electron microscope study of the life cycle of Bothriocephalus acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934

D. Pool

Department of Zoology, University of Liverpool, P.O. Box 147, Liverpool L69 3BX

(Received 14 November 1983, Accepted 16 December 1983)

The stages in the life cycle of *Bothriocephalus acheilognathi* have been studied with the aid of scanning electron microscopy. Emergence of the coracidium occurred after 3-5 days at 20°C. Soon after hatching the coracidium began to swell and the cilia became coiled and lost their locomotory function. The surface of the coracidium was covered in protuberances of unknown function. After consumption by the copepod intermediate host, the coracidium developed into a procercoid. Upon development of a cercomer the procercoid could infect the fish definitive host. Identification of adult *B. acheilognathi* should be made on specimens relaxed in cold water for 10 min, and be based on the heart shaped scolex and prominent square apical disc.

I. INTRODUCTION

A study of the pseudophyllidean cestode *Bothriocephalus acheilognathi* is being undertaken at the University of Liverpool. As an essential first stage to this research the life cycle was established in the laboratory, and the external morphological features of the various stages in the life cycle were examined using scanning electron microscopy.

II. METHOD

Mature *B. acheilognathi* specimens, obtained from a grass carp, *Ctenopharyngodon idella*, were placed in Petri dishes containing distilled water at 10° C, where the majority of the eggs were expelled from the gravid segments within 1 h. Coracidia emerged from the egg after 3-5 days at 20° C. Approximately 10 coracidia were placed in a drop of water containing a single copepod and left for 1 h. The infected copepods were placed in a Petri dish containing 20 ml dechlorinated tap water to which 0.5 ml of hay infusion was added daily. After 10 days at 20° C the procercoids had developed a cercomer and could be used to infect the fish definitive host. Five copepods containing 20 procercoids in total were placed in a beaker containing 100 ml dechlorinated tap water and one 2-3 cm carp, *Cyprinus carpio*. The carp were fed a small quantity of flaked food daily, and killed after 10 days, to obtain the plerocercoid, or after 30 days to obtain the young adult stage.

At each stage in the life cycle specimens were isolated from their respective environments and placed in a cone of filter paper to facilitate handling. After being fixed in 5% formaldehyde solution, washed twice in distilled water and dehydrated using an ethanol series, the contents of the cone were emptied onto double sided adhesive tape for attachment to a viewing stub, or the apex of the cone was mounted directly onto the stub. The specimens were then treated in a Poloron E3000 critical point drier, coated with 60% gold-palladium using a Poloron ES100 sputter coater and viewed using a Philips 501B scanning electron microscope.

361

0022-1112/84/090361+04 \$03.00/0

© 1984 The Fisheries Society of the British Isles



FIG. 1 Scolex of adult *B. acheilognathi* from *Ctenopharyngodon idella* showing square apical disc. Scale = 100 μm.

FIG. 2. Narrow pole of egg, showing operculum. Scale = $1 \mu m$.

FIG. 3. Coracidium emerging from egg. Scale = $7.14 \,\mu m$

FIG. 4. Hatched egg. Scale = $5.6 \,\mu\text{m}$.

III. RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Each stage in the life cycle is represented in Figs 1–10. The life cycle of *Bothriocephalus acheilognathi* closely follows that of other *Bothriocephalidae*, e.g. Essex (1928) (*B. cuspidatus*), Thomas (1937) (*B. rarus*) and Jarecka (1959) (*B. claviceps*).

The ovoid eggs (measuring 0.05×0.062 mm) have a distinct operculum at the narrower end, typical of the pseudophyllidean cestodes (Wardle & McLeod, 1952).

Soon after hatching, the coracidium begins to swell and loses its motility as a result of water absorption (Thomas, 1937). Essex (1928) noted that after swelling the coracidium is 'exclusive of cilia', however reference to Fig. 6 suggests that the cilia become coiled and non-functional. Coiling of the cilia is not permanent and by altering the salt concentration of the solution surrounding the coracidium, the ciliary action can be 'stopped and started at will' (Thomas, 1937). The surface of the coracidium is covered in numerous protruberances which have an unknown function.

The procercoid characterizes the pseudophyllidean and proteocephalan life cycles. The cercomer of infective procercoids contains the rudimentary

SEM STUDY OF A BOTHRIOCEPHALUS CESTODE



FIG. 5. Coracidium soon after emerging from egg. Note uncoiled cilia and surface protruberances. (a) $Scale = 5.9 \mu m$. (b) $Scale = 1 \mu m$.



FIG. 6. Swollen coracidium 5 h after hatching. Note coiled cilia. (a) Scale = $4.9 \,\mu\text{m}$. (b) Scale = $1 \,\mu\text{m}$.

embryonic hooks which are revealed by removal of the outer membrane. Up to 11 procercoids have been recorded from a single copepod. Procercoids from heavily infected copepods have reduced rates of growth (Körting, 1975) and development (Thomas, 1937); infectivity is not affected.

Attachment of the plerocercoid to the fish intestine is by means of two bothria. Development of the bothria commences in the late procercoid stage at the end of the body opposite the cercomer (Thomas, 1937). The scolex is fully formed at the initiation of proglottization, after 15 days at 20° C.

Liao & Shih (1956), while maintaining the life cycle of *B. acheilognathi* at 29° C, observed egg production 20 to 21 days after entry into the intestine. Preliminary experiments by this author suggest that the time required to reach sexual maturity at 30° C, is much longer.

Identification of adult *B. acheilognathi* should be made on specimens relaxed in cold water for 10 min when the heart shaped scolex and prominent square

363



FIG. 7. Infective procercoid with well developed cercomer. Scale = $6.25 \,\mu m$.

FIG. 8. Embryonic hooks on procercoid cercomer, revealed by removal of outer membrane. Scale = 1 μ m.

FIG. 9. Plerocercoid 10 days after entering definitive host. Scale \doteq 7.7 μ m.

FIG. 10. Early adult worm 30 days after entering definitive host. Scale = $5.9 \,\mu m$.

apical disc enable them to be distinguished from other cestodes infecting freshwater fish.

References

Essex, H. E. (1928). On the life-history of Bothriocephalus cuspidatus Cooper, 1917, a tapeworm of the wall eyed pike. Trans. Am. Microsc. Soc. 47, 348-351.

Jarecka, L. (1958). On the life-cycle of Bothriocephalus claviceps (Goeze, 1782). Acta parasit. pol. 7, 527-532. Körting, W. (1975). Larval development of *Bothriocephalus* sp. (Cestoda: Pseudophyl-

lidea) from carp (Cyprinus carpia L.) in Germany. J. Fish Biol. 7, 727-733.

Liao, H. H. & Shih, L. C. (1956). Contribution to the biology and control of Bothriocephalus gowkongensis Yeh, a tapeworm parasitic in the young grass carp Ctenopharyngodon idella C. and U. Acta Hydrobiol. Sin. 2, 129-185.

Thomas, L. J. (1937). Environmental relations and life history of the tapeworm Bothriocephalus rarus Thomas. J. Parasitol. 23, 133-152.

Wardle, R. A. & McLeod, J. A. (1952). The Zoology of Tapeworms, pp. 780. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.



The effect of praziquantel on the pseudophyllidean cestode *Bothriocephalus acheilognathi* in vitro

D.W. Pool

Department of Zoology, The University of Liverpool, P.O. Box 147, Liverpool L69 3BX, UK

Abstract. Adult Bothriocephalus acheilognathi were incubated in solutions containing 0 (control), 0.1, 1.0, 10.0 and 100 μ g praziquantel per ml (0, 10², 10³, 10⁴ and 10⁵ μ gl⁻¹) of 0.9% saline for 5, 15 and 60 min at a temperature of 18° C. The worms contracted immediately upon being placed in the drug. Scanning and transmission electron microscopy revealed considerable tegumental damage particularly in the neck region. Vacuolization and 'bubbling' of the tegument occurred in all of the drug solutions tested. Exposure to drug concentrations of more than 1.0 μ gml⁻¹ (10³ μ gl⁻¹) praziquantel for 15 min or greater resulted in many of the 'bubbles' bursting and releasing their contents to the exterior. Mature proglottides were distorted and had occasional large swellings resulting in the mass expulsion of eggs. Praziquantel had no ovicidal activity. Exposure to drug concentrations of 100 μ g (10⁵ μ gl⁻¹) praziquantel per ml saline for 24 h was not lethal to the worms.

Introduction

They highly efficacious nature of praziquantel (Droncit, Bayer) against numerous cestode and trematode species (Andrews et al. 1983); and the toleration to it shown by fish make it an ideal anthelmintic for the control of many fish parasites. Studies have shown it to be effective against *Diplostomum spathaceum* in rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) (Bylund and Sumari 1981), *Bunodera luciopercae* in perch (*Perca fluviatilis*), *Eubothrium rugosum* in burbot (*Lota lota*), *Ligula intestinalis* in roach (*Rutilus rutilus*) and *Sanguinicola inermis* in carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) (cited Andrews et al. 1983), *Proteocephalus osculatus* in the Wels catfish (*Siluris glanis*). (Andrews and Riley 1982) and *Bothriocephalus acheilognathi* in grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*) (Andrews and Riley 1982; Pool et al. 1984).

Previous workers have studied the effect of the drug on the morphology

Offprint requests to: D.W. Pool

of parasites of medical and veterinary importance (e.g., Conder et al. 1981; Becker et al. 1981), but as yet none have concentrated on the parasites of fish.

As part of a larger investigation of the treatment of *Bothriocephalus* acheilognathi with praziquantel, worms were examined using scanning and transmission electron microscopy (SEM and TEM) after in vitro exposure to various drug concentrations.

Materials and methods

Immature and mature *Bothriocephalus acheilognathi* specimens were obtained from 0 + grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*). The parasites, individually and attached to the intestinal mucosa, were exposed for 5, 15 and 60 min to concentrations of 0 (control), 0.1, 1.0, 10 and 100 µg praziquantel per ml (0, 10^2 , 10^3 , 10^4 and $10^5 µgl^{-1}$) of 0.9% saline at 18° C. For SEM the worms were fixed in a 4% formaldehyde solution for 1 h, washed twice

For SEM the worms were fixed in a 4% formaldehyde solution for 1 h, washed twice in distilled water and dehydrated using an ethanol series. The worms were treated in a Polaron E3000 critical point drier, followed by coating with 60% gold palladium using a Polaron E5100 sputter coater and viewed using a Philips 501B SEM.

For TEM worms were fixed for 5 h in a 2% paraformaldehyde and 2.5% gluteraldehyde solution in 0.1 *M* sodium cacodylate buffer, adjusted to a pH of 7.2 using 0.1 *M* hydrochloric acid. Calcium chloride was added to the buffer to give a final concentration of 2.5 m*M* to reduce membrane swelling. The worms were washed twice in 0.1 *M* sodium cacodylate buffer, pH 7.2; cut into sections of approximately 2 proglottides, and post-fixed for 3 h in 1% osmium tetroxide in a sodium cacodylate buffer, pH 7.2. After washing in a cacodylate buffer, the worms were dehydrated in an ethanol series, and gradually infiltrated with a standard mixture of spur low epoxy resin. The specimens were treated for 16 h at 60° C. Sections were cut 90 nm thick using a Reichert 0MU3 ultramicrotome and stained using saturated uranyl acetate in 50% ethanol for 20 min and lead citrate for 5 min at 20° C. Sodium hydroxide crystals were added to the lead citrate to prevent lead carbonate formation. The sections were washed in 0.02 *M* sodium hydroxide and distilled water; and viewed using a Kratos Conneth 500 TEM (Smith 1980).

Results

The tapeworms treated with 1.0, 10.0 and 100 μ g praziquantel per ml (10³, 10⁴ and 10⁵ μ gl⁻¹) saline contracted immediately upon being placed in the drug solution, the intensity of the response increased with the concentration of the drug. After 15 min the worms placed in a 0.1 μ gml⁻¹ (10² μ gl⁻¹) solution showed areas of contraction and relaxation along the strobila. After 24 h exposure to the drug solutions, the worms were still attached to the intestine, and showed a weak response when touched. Control worms were still active but had released their hold on the intestine.

Scanning electron microscopy

Treated and untreated worms, as observed by SEM are shown in Figs. 1-6. The tegument of the control worms was uniformly covered by microtriches. Dome-shaped tumuli were evenly spaced over the scolex, but decreased posteriorly, being absent from mature and gravid proglottides (Fig. 2). Adjacent proglottides were of a similar size and shape (Fig. 1).

Worms exposed to $0.1 \,\mu g \,(10^2 \,\mu g l^{-1})$ praziquantel per ml saline were morphologically identical with the control after 5 and 15 min.

604

After 60 min exposure occasional small 'blebs' $(1-10 \ \mu m)$ were apparent on the outer surface of the bothria, and on proglottide margins in the neck region.

At a praziquantel concentration of $1.0 \,\mu \text{gml}^{-1}$ ($10^3 \,\mu \text{gl}^{-1}$) the 'blebs' were more numerous, particularly on the scolex, and appeared after only 5 min exposure (Fig. 3). Increased exposure to the drug resulted in many of the blebs bursting (Fig. 4). The mature proglottides were swollen after 15 and 60 min exposure (Fig. 5).

Worms exposed to 10 µg praziquantel per ml ($10^4 \mu gl^{-1}$) saline solution showed the most intense reaction. Large areas of the scolex were covered in 'blebs' (1–10 µm diameter) after only 5 min exposure. Swelling and distortion of the mature proglottides occurred after 15 min. Large vacuoles (280 µm × 140 µm) formed on some mature proglottides after 1 h (Fig. 6).

Exposure to $100 \,\mu \text{gml}^{-1} (10^5 \,\mu \text{gl}^{-1})$ praziquantel solution resulted in fewer blebs on the scolex, but a higher density on the neck region of the strobila. Mature proglottides were swollen.

Transmission electron microscopy

The structure of the tegument of *B. acheilognathi* is similar to that described for other cestodes (e.g., Lumsden 1966; Becker et al. 1980) and has been described in detail by Granath et al. (1983). The distal cytoplasm is covered in numerous $1-2 \mu m$ microtriches, and is rich in mitochondria and vesicles. The basal lamina separates the muscle layer from the distal cytoplasm (Fig. 7).

Examination of the 'blebs' observed using the SEM reveals them to be continuous with the distal cytoplasm. The 'blebs' diameter 1–10 μ m were filled with cytoplasm and granules, indicating that leakage of the tegument had occurred (Fig. 8).

Vacuoles $(2-5 \,\mu\text{m} \text{ diameter})$ were apparent after 15 min in the distal cytoplasm of worms exposed to a 1.0 $\mu\text{gml}(10^3 \,\mu\text{gl}^{-1})$ or greater praziquantel solution. After 1 h these vacuoles were larger $(2-10 \,\mu\text{m} \text{ diameter})$ and more extensive. Cellular leakage into the vacuoles had occurred (Fig. 8). The microtriches appear to be unaffected by the drug.

Discussion

The effect of praziquantel on the tegument of *Bothriocephalus acheilognathi* is similar to that described for other cestode species (e.g. Conder et al. 1981; Becker et al. 1980, 1981).

Praziquantel concentrations as low as $0.001 \ \mu gml^{-1} (1 \ \mu gl^{-1})$ have been shown to affect adult hymenolepid and echinococcus adult cestodes, while concentrations of $0.01 \ \mu gml^{-1} (10 \ \mu gl^{-1})$ can cause contraction and paralysis (Andrews and Thomas 1979). Bothriocephalus acheilognathi appeared to show a greater degree of tolerance to the drug, a concentration of $0.1 \ \mu gml^{-1} (10^2 \ \mu gl^{-1})$ for 15 min or $1 \ \mu gml^{-1} (10^3 \ \mu gl^{-1})$ for 5 s being required to produce contraction. Paralysis of the strobila did not occur in the drug concentrations tested. Previous in vitro studies were conducted

D.W. Pool



Fig. 1. Mature proglottides from *Bothriocephalus acheilognathi* incubated in the control solution (0.9% saline) for 15 min. Viewed with SEM. Marker = $100 \mu m$

606

Effect of praziquantel on Bothriocephalus acheilognathi in vitro



Fig. 7. Transmission electron micrograph of the tegument in the neck region of *B. acheilognathi* incubated in the control solution for 15 min. Microtriches (*m*), distal cytoplasm (*d*), basal layer (*bl*), and circular musculature (*c*). \times 5,000

Fig. 8. Transmission electron micrograph of *B. acheilognathi* tegument from the neck region incubated for 5 min in 1.0 μ g praziquantel per ml (10³ μ gl⁻¹) 0.9% saline. Note vacuolisation (*v*) and ballooning of tegument (*b*). × 3,000

with mammalian cestodes (e.g., Becker et al. 1980, 1981) at a temperature of 37° C. The lower temperature (18° C) employed in this study may explain the apparent reduced sensitivity.

Considerable variation in the effect of the drug occurred along the length of the worm. The scolex and neck region of the tegument showed the characteristic ballooning and vacuolization, previously recorded in a number of cestode species (Andrews et al. 1983). Becker et al. (1981) suggest that this is a result of the high metabolic activity in this area. Unlike other cestodes, the mature proglottides of *B. acheilognathi* were affected by praziquantel being grossly distorted with occasional large swellings. This response resulted in the mass expulsion of eggs, which hatched normally to produce viable coracidia. Control worms released very few eggs. The non ovicidal

Fig. 2. Scanning electron micrograph of *B. acheilognathi* tegument from the neck region incubated in the control solution for 60 min. Note microtriches (*M*) and tumuli (*T*). Marker = 1 μ m

Figs. 3 and 4. Scanning electron micrograph of *B. acheilognathi* tegument from the neck region exposed to a solution of 1.0 μ g praziquantel per ml (10³ μ gl⁻¹) 0.9% saline. **Fig. 3.** Incubated for 5 min.

Fig. 4. Incubated for 15 min. Marker = $10 \mu m$

Fig. 5. Scanning electron micrograph of swollen mature proglottides from *B. acheilognathi* incubated in 1.0 μ g praziquantel per ml (10³ μ gl⁻¹) 0.9% saline for 60 min. Marker = 100 μ m

Fig. 6. Scanning electron micrograph of large swelling on mature proglottide of *B. acheilognathi* incubated in 10 µg praziquantel per ml $(10^4 \mu gl^{-1}) 0.9\%$ saline for 60 min. Marker = 10 µm

activity of praziquantel has previously been recorded for *Echinococcus granulosus* (Thakur et al. 1979) and stresses the need for care when disposing of water and faeces after treatment.

The in vivo studies of Andrews and Riley (1982) and Pool et al. (1984) found praziquantel to be completely effective in eliminating *B. acheilognathi* from the fish host. It is interesting to note that in the present study in vitro exposure of the worms to praziquantel concentrations of up to $100 \,\mu gml^{-1} (10^5 \,\mu gl^{-1})$ for 24 h failed to kill the worms or cause them to release their hold on the intestine. Further in vivo studies by the author have shown that expulsion of the worms from the gut occurs approximately 72 h after treatment. In view of the rapid elimination of praziquantel from the body (Steiner and Garbe 1976, Andrews and Thomas 1979) it is probable that some other factor, such as the action of the host digestive enzymes on the damaged tegument and/or the peristatic action of the intestine contributes to the expulsion of the worms from the gut.

Acknowledgements. The author wishes to thank Drs. A.F. Brown and J.C. Chubb, University of Liverpool for critical reading of manuscript, Mr. C. Veltkamp, University of Liverpool for SEM, Mr. J. Smith, University of Liverpool for TEM and Dr. R. Sweeting, Thames Water Authority for providing praziquantel. The Natural Environment Research Council provided a studentship, without which the work could not have been completed.

References

Andrews C, Riley A (1982) Anthelmintic treatment of fish via stomach tube. Fish Mgmt 13:83-84

- Andrews P, Thomas H (1979) The effect of praziquantel on Hymenolepis diminuta in vitro. Tropenmed Parasitol 30:391-400
- Andrews P, Thomas H, Pohlke R, Seubert J (1983) Praziquantel. Med Res Rev 3:147-200
- Becker B, Mehlhorn H, Andrews P, Thomas H (1980) Scanning and transmission electron microscope studies on the efficacy of praziquantel on *Hymenolepis nana* (Cestoda) in vitro. Z Parasitenkd 61:121-133

Becker B, Mehlhorn H, Andrews P, Thomas H (1981) Ultrastructural investigations on the effect of praziquantel on the tegument of five species of cestodes. Z Parasitenkd 64:257-269

Bylund G, Sumari O (1981) Laboratory tests with Droncit against diplostomiasis in rainbow trout, Salmo gairdneri Richardson. J Fish Dis 4:259-264

Conder GA, Marchiondo AA, Andersen FL (1981) Effect of praziquantel on adult Echinococcus granulosus in vitro: Scanning electron microscopy. Z Parasitenkd 66:191-199

- Granath WO Jr, Lewis JC, Esch GW (1983) An ultrastructural examination of the scolex and tegument of *Bothriocephalus acheilognathi* (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea). Trans Am Microsc Soc 102:240-250
- Lumsden RD (1966) Cytological studies on the absorptive surfaces of cestodes 1. The fine structure of the strobilar integument. Z Parasitenkd 27:355-382
- Pool D, Ryder K, Andrews C (1984) The control of Bothriocephalus acheilognathi in grass carp, Ctenopharyngodon idella, using praziquantel. Fish Mgmt 15:31-33
- Smith J (1980) An ultrastructural study of embryos, early larvae and embryonic cells of the South African Clawed Toad, Xenopus laevis. M Sc thesis, University of Liverpool

Steiner K, Garbe A (1976) The fate of praziquantel in the organism. II Distribution in rats. Eur J Drug Metab Pharmacokin 2:97-106

Thakur AS, Prezioso U, Marchevsky N (1979) Echinococcus granulosus: ovicidal activity of praziquantel and bunamidine hydrochloride. Exp Parasit 47:131-133

Accepted February 22, 1985

A critical scanning electron microscope study of the scolex of *Bothriocephalus* acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934, with a review of the taxonomic history of the genus *Bothriocephalus* parasitizing cyprinid fishes

David W. POOL and James C. CHUBB

Department of Zoology, University of Liverpool, P.O. Box 147, Liverpool, L69 3BX, England

Summary

Bothriocephalus specimens from one Ctenopharyngodon idella (O+) were fixed using three different techniques and the scolex morphology was examined using scanning electron microscopy. The scolices were compared with figures of the five species of Bothriocephalus and one species of Schyzocotyle previously described from cyprinid fishes. The taxonomic history of the Bothriocephalus species parasitizing cyprinid fish is reviewed. It is concluded that there is only one Bothriocephalus species parasitizing cyprinid fishes, and that continued use should be made of the name B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934.

Introduction

The specific identity of *Bothriocephalus* species imported into fish farms in the British Isles has been a matter of conjecture since their first reported introduction (Andrews *et al.*, 1981).

Recently Dubinina (1982) has drawn attention to the confusion concerning the taxonomic status of the species of the genus Bothriocephalus parasitizing cyprinid fishes. She concluded that in the USSR there were two species: the widely distributed B. opsariichthydis Yamaguti, 1934 (synonyms B. gowkongensis Yeh, 1955 and B. phoxini Molnár. 1968) and the less prevalent B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934 (synonym Schyzocotyle fluviatilis Akhmerov, 1960), which could be distinguished by their differing scolex morphology. This opposed the generally accepted view of Molnár (1977) that the four species of Bothriocephalus described from European cyprinid fishes were in fact one and, in agreement with Körting (1975), that priority should be given to the name B. acheilognathi with B.

opsariichthydis, B. gowkongensis and B. phoxini as synonyms.

Thus there is considerable disagreement over the identity of species of *Bothriocephalus* in cyprinids: this may be owing to the extreme variation in the size of the living worms. Adult *Bothriocephalus* have no hard structures, and are active worms, capable of considerable mobility of the body, especially the scolex. Therefore considerable variation in morphology can be induced by the fixation process. The species described from cyprinids are very similar in morphology, so much so that it is a matter of conjecture whether the differences are specific, intraspecific or artefacts of fixation.

It is the purpose of the present paper to examine the suggestion of Dubinina (1982) that, for the identification of species of this genus, special attention should be paid to the structure of the scolex; and to clarify the taxonomic status of some members of the genus.

Materials and methods

In order to demonstrate consistency or variation in scolex morphology in our species of Bothriocephalus all the worms were obtained from a single O + Ctenopharyngodon idella (Valenciennes) (Cyprinidae). Ten worms of various sizes were fixed in each of the following procedures: (i) in situ in the host intestine using a 10% formaldehyde solution; (ii) removed from the intestine and immediately placed in absolute alcohol at 25°C; and (iii) removed from the intestine, relaxed in distilled water at 10° C for 5 min followed by immersion in a 10% formaldehyde solution. After fixation specimens in formaldehyde were washed twice in distilled water and dehydrated using an ethanol series. All scolices were treated in a Polaron E3000 critical point drier, followed by coating with 60% goldpaladium using a Poloron E5100 sputter coater and viewed using a Philips 501B scanning electron microscope.

Bothriocephalus plerocercoid and early adult stages were reared in the laboratory using the methods detailed by Körting (1975). The plerocercoids and early adults were allowed to develop within the fish intestine for 16 and 40 days respectively at 20°C before removal. To facilitate handling owing to their small size these specimens were placed in a cone of filter paper for fixation using method (iii) (above). After drying, the contents of the cone were emptied on to double-sided adhesive tape for attachment to the viewing stub, or the apex of the cone was mounted directly on the stub. The specimens were sputter coated and viewed as indicated above.

Results

The results are presented as a series of photographs of representative scolices obtained using each of the three fixation procedures.

Figures 1–4 show scolices fixed *in situ* in the intestine of the host. They were rounded, the bothria were short and orientated towards the apex of the scolex (anterior) and the apical disc was very apparent, with, in some individuals (Figs. 2–4) four

distinct lobes. Little variation in size or form of scolices fixed *in situ* was seen.

Figures 5–7 demonstrate scolices fixed immediately after removal from the intestine. In this instance the scolices were not completely relaxed, the bothria were open and the apical discs were not obvious. The shape of the scolex was a manifestation of the state of contraction or extension of the musculature at the moment of fixation. Accordingly, considerable variation in the form of the scolex resulted.

Figures 8–12 illustrate scolices relaxed in distilled water before fixation. These scolices were all an inverted heart-shape with a characteristic apical disc (Fig. 12). In most of these relaxed specimens the bothria were closed and were approximately two thirds the length of the scolex. The variation between the two bothria of one individual scolex is shown in Figures 10 and 11. One bothrium (Fig. 10) is contracted around a piece of intestinal tissue, while the other (Fig. 11) is relaxed. The scolices which were relaxed before fixation showed very little variation in morphology.

The apical disc, shown on adult *Bothriocephalus* fixed *in situ* in the intestine (Figs. 1–4) and in the relaxed individuals (Figs. 8–12), was also visible on late plerocercoid (Fig. 13) and early adult stages (Fig. 14) of the life-cycle.

Discussion

The results illustrated in this paper clearly demonstrate the well-known fact that the shape of softbodied helminths will vary according to their treatment during autopsy and fixation. To provide a controlled situation, gravid *Bothriocephalus* from a single species infection in one individual fish were used, and, therefore, any variation would be owing to intraspecific variation or artefacts of fixation. In fact, specified conditions and methods of fixation appeared more significant in affecting scolex morphology than intraspecific variation, which should not surprise anyone who has worked with living pseudophyllidean cestodes, as in many species the mobility of the scolex can be clearly seen *in vitro* (Brandt *et al.*, 1981).



Figs. 1, 2, 3. *B. acheilognathi* scolices from *C. idella* fixed *in situ* in the host intestine using 10% formaldehyde solution. 1. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Bar micron markers are $100 \,\mu$ m each. 2. Viewed at 30 kv. using back scattered electrons. Markers 76.92 μ m each. 3. Viewed at 3.6 kv. Markers $100 \,\mu$ m each.

Fig. La. Schyzocotyle fluviatilis. From Akhmerov, 1960: Fig. 4.1 p. 20.

Fig. 3a. B. opsariichthydis. From Dubinina, 1971: Fig. 10, p. 90.

Fig. 3b. B. gowkongensis or B. opsalichthydis (= opsariichthydis) From Körting, 1974; Fig. 2 p. 168.



Fig. 4. *B. acheilognathi* scolex from *C. idella* fixed *in situ* in the host intestine using 10% formaldehyde solution. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers $83.33 \mu \text{m}$ each.

Fig. 4a. Schyzocotyle fluviatilis. From Akhmerov. 1960: Fig. 3,1. p. 20.

Fig. 5. *B. acheilognathi* scolex from *C. idella* fixed immediately after removal from intestine by immersion in absolute alcohol at 25° C. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 71.43 μ m each.

Fig. 5a. B. gowkongensis. From Yeh, 1955: Fig. 2 between pp. 73–74. Bar marker = $100 \,\mu m$.

Fig. 5b. B. gowkongensis or B. opsalichthydis. (= opsariichthydis). From Körting, 1974: Fig. 1, p. 168.

Fig. 5c. B. gowkongensis or B. opsalichthydis. (= opsariichthydis). From Körting, 1974: Fig. 3, p. 169.

202



Figs. 6, 7. *B. acheilognathi* scolices from *C. idella* fixed immediately after removal from intestine by immersion in absolute alcohol at 25°C. Viewed at 3.6 kv. Markers 76.92 μ m each. 7. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 71.43 μ m each.

Fig. 6a B. gowkongensis. From Yeh. 1955: Fig. 1 between pp. 73–74. Bar marker = $100 \mu m$.

Fig. 6b. B. opsariichthydis. From Yamaguti, 1934: Fig. 23, p 17.

Fig. 8. *B. acheilognathi* scolex from *C. idella*, relaxed in distilled water at 10° C for 5 min before fixation in 10% formaldehyde solution. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 100 μ m each.

Fig. 8a. B. acheilognathi. From Yamaguti, 1934: Fig. 20, p. 15.

204 SEM study and taxonomic review of Bothriocephalus



Fig. 8b. B. gowkongensis. From Molnár & Murai, 1973: Fig. 2 opposite p. 102. Bar marker = 100 µm.

Fig. 8c. B. phoxini. From Molnár & Murai, 1973: Fig. 7 opposite p. 103. Bar marker = 50 µm.

Fig. 9. B. acheilognathi scolex from C. idella relaxed in distilled water at 10° C for 5 min before fixation in 10% formaldehyde solution. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 76.92 µm each.

Fig. 9a. B. gowkongensis. From Musselius, 1973: Fig. 8a p. 28.

Fig. 9b. B. gowkongensis. From Molnár & Murai, 1973: Fig. 1 opposite p. 102. Bar marker = 100 µm.

Fig. 9c. B. phoxini. From Molnar. 1968; Fig. 1D p. 184.



Figs. 10, 11, 12. *B. acheilognathi* scolices from *C. idella* relaxed in distilled water at 10° C for 5 min before fixation in 10% formaldehyde solution. 10. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 71.43 μm each. Same scolex as Fig. 11. Bothrium contracted around intestinal material. 11. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 71.43 μm each. Same scolex as Fig. 10. Other bothrium relaxed. 12. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 71.43 μm each. Fig. 11a. *B. gowkongensis*. From Protasova, 1977: Fig. 14a p. 88. Bar marker 200 μm.

Fig. 11b. B. phoxini. From Molnár & Murai, 1973: Fig. 8 opposite p. 103. Bar marker = 50 µm.

Fig. 12a. S. fluviatilis. From Akhmerov, 1960: Fig. 4 p. 20.



Fig. 13. *B. acheilognathi* late plerocercoid relaxed in distilled water at 10° C for 5 min before fixation in 10% formaldehyde. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 7.7 μ m each.

Fig. 14. *B acheilognathi* early adult relaxed in distilled water at 10°C for 5 min before fixation in 10% formaldehyde. Viewed at 7.2 kv. Markers 5.9 µm each.

How does this conclusion influence the proposals of Dubinina (1982) and others concerning the species found in cyprinid fishes? It is convenient to review the literature briefly and where possible to relate the scolex characteristics as given in the literature to the three conditions used in our study.

Yamaguti (1934) described B. acheilognathi from a single worm 80 mm long found in the intestine of Acheilognathus rhombea (Temminck & Schlegel) (Cyprinidae) from Lake Ogura, Japan. Although he thought the worm had a somewhat atypical scolex, the internal anatomy justified its inclusion in the genus Bothriocephalus. His illustration is reproduced as Figure 8a beside Figure 8. We are of the opinion that it represents the scolex typical of a worm fixed after relaxation. In the same publication Yamaguti (1934) described a second species of Bothriocephalus from a cyprinid fish Opsariichthys uncirostris (Temminck & Schlegel) from Lake Biwa and the River Yodo, Japan. Yamaguti misspelt the generic name of the host, it should have been Opsariichthys, hence the cestode was incorrectly named B. opsalichthydis, although later Yamaguti (1959) emended the spelling to opsariichthydis. B. opsariichthydis was a common worm, up to more than 100 mm long with an inverted heart-shaped scolex with a prominent

terminal disc and deep bothridial grooves. His illustration of the scolex is reproduced as Figure 6b beside Figure 6. We believe it represents a worm fixed immediately after removal from the host intestine. Yamaguti (1934) noted in B. opsariichthydis that the eggs contained embryos which were segmented but not yet fully embryonated (July). This point is important later in connection with B. gowkongensis. Yamaguti (1952) subsequently described a third species, B. fluviatilis, from a Japanese cyprinid fish Hymenophysa curta (Temminck & Schlegel) also from the River Yodo, Japan. B. fluviatilis was a small worm 22.5 mm long, presumably not gravid, as no details of egg dimensions were provided. A mature proglottis was figured (Yamaguti, 1952, Plate I, Fig. 1, opposite p. 76), but not the scolex.

Yeh (1955) described *B. gowkongensis* from *Ctenopharyngodon idella* from Gowkong, near Canton, South China. The worms were 35–80 mm long, with a large inverted heart-shaped scolex. Yeh figured three scolices.

Two of Yeh's figures (his Figs. 1 and 2) correspond to two of our worms fixed immediately after removal from the fish intestine (Fig. 5 and 6) and are reproduced as Figures 5a and 6a; his three illustrations show a range of variation characteristic of this situation. In *B. gowkongensis* the eggs were fully embryonated when laid, according to Yeh the first *Bothriocephalus* species recognized as showing this phenomenon. Yeh found variation in a large number of specimens of *B. gowkongensis* and as a consequence suggested that *B. opsariichthydis* was a synonym of *B. acheilognathi*. It should be noted that Yeh (1955) corrected the spelling of *B. opsalichthydis* to *B. opsariichthydis*.

In 1956 Liao & Shih demonstrated that the degree of embryonation of the eggs of *B. gowkongen*sis varied with season and water temperature. Eighty-nine percent of the eggs were fully embryonated on release from April to October (24 to 29° C), whereas only 2% were from November until February (14.8 to 21.3° C).

Baer & Fain (1958) also suggested that *B. op-salichthydis* (= opsariichthydis) was a synonym of *B. acheilognathi* owing to the fact that they could not separate the two species on morphological features. Yamaguti (1959) accepted that *B. opsariichthydis* and *B. acheilognathi* were synonyms as well as emending the original spelling of the specific epithet opsalichthydis as indicated earlier.

It is interesting to note that Baer & Fain (1958) considered *Clestobothrium crassiceps* (Rudolphi, 1819) to be in the same genus as *B. acheilognathi* and *B. kivuensis* Baer & Fain, 1958 on the basis of their similar scolex morphology. They reduced *Clestobothrium* to a subgenus and renamed the three species B.(C). crassiceps, B.(C.) acheilognathi and B.(C.) kivuensis. This view was supported by Tadros (1967), who transferred *B. acheilognathi* and *B. kivuensis* to the genus *Clestobothrium* and emended the diagnosis of the genus.

An examination of the descriptions of the genera Clestobothrium and Bothriocephalus provided by Wardle & McLeod (1952) indicates that they differ most notably in the presence of operculate eggs in Bothriocephalus and their absence in Clestobothrium. Therefore, despite the similarity in scolex morphology, C. crassiceps should not be included in the same genus as B. acheilognathi.

Bothriocephalus phoxini Molnár, 1968 was described from Phoxinus phoxinus (L.) (Cyprinidae) in a tarn near Lake Balaton, Hungary. In this host the worms had a maximum length of 45 mm and an inverted heart-shaped scolex. A terminal disc and two bothria were readily visible in relaxed specimens. Such a description corresponds to our findings (Figs. 8–12) and Molnár's figure is reproduced as Figure 9c.

According to Molnár (1968) the range of the host P. phoxinus, the endemic nature of the infection he discovered and the small size of individuals of B. phoxini readily served to differentiate them from all known European bothriocephalids and also from B. opsariichthydis from the Far East. The finding of B. gowkongensis in Hungary resulted in a comparison of the morphology of B. gowkongensis and B. phoxini by Molnár & Murai (1973) which substantiated the separation of the two species. Molnár & Murai (1973) fixed their materials using mostly hot 5% formalin. (See Figs. 8b, 8c, 9b, 11b.) Molnár (1977), by means of cross infection experiments using eggs from tapeworms found in Cyprinus carpio and Phoxinus phoxinus, demonstrated that typical B. gowkongensis worms were recovered from C. carpio and typical B. phoxini specimens were recovered from P. phoxinus.

Otte et al. (1972) considered the Bothriocephalus spp. found in Cyprinus carpio imported into Austria from Hungary to be B. acheilognathi, with B. opsariichthydis as a synonym. Körting (1974) commented about B. gowkongensis or B. opsalichthydis (see Figs. 3b, 5b, 5c), he stated 'the name of the species is not yet finally established'. By 1975 Körting observed that, in the event of the three species B. acheilognathi, B. opsariichthydis and B. gowkongensis being accepted as synonymous, the priority should be with B. acheilognathi. The Bothriocephalus sp. he studied from Cyprinus carpio in southern Bavaria appeared to be B. opsariichthydis as no fully embryonated eggs were detected when they were expelled from the uterus. However, in the light of Liao & Shih (1956) establishing that the maturity of the eggs of B. gowkongensis was dependent upon the season of the year and that the tapeworm could deliver both fully embryonated and half-embryonated eggs, together with the fact that B. opsariichthydis and B. gowkongensis could not be differentiated by morphological features, Körting (1975) favoured the opinion that the two species were identical. As a consequence of the cross-infection experiments

performed by Molnár (1977) he proposed that the names *B. opsariichthydis* Yamaguti, 1934, *B. gowkongensis* Yeh, 1955 and *B. phoxini* Molnár, 1968 were synonyms of a single species which, by virtue of priority, should be called *B. acheilognathi* Yamaguti, 1934.

In Japan Nakajima & Egusa (1974) examined Bothriocephalus in Cyprinus carpio from farm ponds in Nagano, Yamagata and Akita prefectures. They decided that the criteria for identification were: (i) shape and structure of the body their species resembled B. acheilognathi, B. opsariichthydis, B. fluviatilis and B. gowkongensis, all of which had been found in Japan or China; (ii) their species differed from B. gowkongensis in that the egg was never embryonated when laid; (iii) the body length of their worms (average of 10 of the largest mature individuals, 173 mm) was close to B. opsariichthydis (more than 100 mm long according to Yamaguti, 1934), but differed from B. acheilognathi (about 80 mm) and B. fluviatilis (22 mm); (iv) Nakajima & Egusa (1974) proposed that B. acheilognathi and B. fluviatilis were young stages of B. opsariichthydis. Their Figure 2 A-D (not reproduced herein) clearly revealed how the form of the scolex was changed according to condition and angle of view.

To summarize at this point, the opinion held by most authorities was that there was one species in cyprinids (Nakajima & Egusa, 1974; Körting, 1975; Molnár, 1977). This view was adopted by Andrews *et al.* (1981) and Chubb (1981) when *Bothriocephalus* were found in three fish farms in the British Isles during 1979.

However Dubinina (1982) proposed an alternative view, based largely on the hypothesis that for the identification of the species of the genus *Bothriocephalus* special attention should be given to the structure of the scolex. On the basis of scolex morphology she suggested that *B. opsariichthydis* and *B. acheilognathi* were distinct species. She further suggested that *B. gowkongensis* and *B. phoxini* were synonyms of *B. opsariichthydis*, and *Schyzocotyle fluviatilis* Akhmerov, 1960 was a synonym of *B. acheilognathi*.

The figures of the scolex of *Schyzocotyle* fluviatilis provided by Akhmerov (1960) clearly

show it to be a bothriocephalid as proposed by Dubinina (1982) (Fig. 1a, 4a and 12a), although the sketch of the scolex (Fig. 4a) is perplexing. It may correspond to our Figure 4 or may be a damaged scolex. The details of the proglottis confirm the worm as a *Bothriocephalus*.

Dubinina (1982) suggested that Yamaguti (1959) confirmed the independence of the two species B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934 and B. opsariichthydis Yamaguti, 1934. Yamaguti (1959) has two entries: p. 44 'B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934, in Acheilognathus rhombea; Japan. Also in Gnathopogon elongatus suwae, Japan.' and p. 46 'B. opsariichthydis Yamaguti, 1934,1) syn. of B. acheilognathi — Yeh, 1955, in Opsariichthys uncirostris: Japan.' The footnote on p. 46 reads: '1) Original spelling opsalichthydis emended to opsariichthydis'. In our opinion the dash between the two sections of the entry for B. opsariichthydis on p. 46 leaves no doubt that Yamaguti accepted the proposal of Yeh (1955) that B. opsariichthydis was a synonym of B. acheilognathi. In this respect Körting (1975) and Protasova (1977) were correct. Nakajima & Egusa (1974) were also in agreement, but they opted for the alternative view, of B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934 as a synonym of B. opsariichthydis Yamaguti, 1934.

A number of other authors have figured a scolex of *Bothriocephalus* from cyprinid fishes, including Dubinina (1971), Musselius (1973) and Protasova (1977). The Dubinina (1971) scolex (as *B. opsariichthydis*, see Fig. 3a) corresponds broadly to our Figure 3, a specimen fixed *in situ* in 10% formaldehyde; that of Musselius (1973, as *B. gowkongensis*, see Fig. 9a) approaches our Figure 9, an individual relaxed in cold water and fixed in 10% formaldehyde, and that of Protasova (1977, as *B. gowkongensis*, see Fig. 11a) resembles our Figure 11, a specimen also fixed after relaxation.

Some other Bothriocephalus spp. need a mention. B. capillicollis Mégnin, 1883 was found in a 'carpe de mer' from the coast of Norwegian Lapland. According to Gozmány (1979) the 'carpe de mer' is Labrus bergylta Ascanius, 1767 (Labridae) and is therefore not relevant here, although Linstow (1889) listed it from Idus melanotus and Zschokke (1903) from Leuciscus idus. We agree with Protasova (1977) that this form should be treated as a *species inquirenda*. Rudolphi (1810) described *B. granularis* in 'Cyprinus' observed by Zeder in 1788. The description given by Rudolphi provides too little information for precise evaluation of the worm, so that again we agree with Protasova (1977) that it should be treated as a *species inquirenda*.

B. kivuensis, from Barbus altianalis altianalis Blgr. in Lake Kivu, has a scolex resembling Bothriocephalus acheilognathi, but its great length, 700 mm to 1 m, more than three times as long as the largest B. acheilognathi specimen we have examined, and the presence of a vaginal sphincter suggest that it is a distinct species. B. aegyptiacus Ryšavý & Moravec, 1975 was recorded from Barbus bynni in the River Nile. The scolex is similar to that of Bothriocephalus opsalichthydis, but is has fewer testes, 60–100 as compared with 100–200 and is somewhat larger (502–611 × 3.8–4.3 mm compared to 100×1.25 mm). The above two species require further critical investigation to validate their taxonomic status.

Prigli (1974, 1975) noted the role of aquatic birds in the spread of *B. acheilognathi* (as *B. gowkongensis*) in Hungary. Borgarenko (1981) observed this phenomenon in Tadzhikstan and figured a scolex from the intestine of the little bittern *Ixobrychus minutus* L. Shinde & Jadhav (1977) recorded a single specimen of *B. opsariichthydis* in a marine fish *Histophorus gladius* at Veraval on the west coast of India. Although they described and figured this worm we doubt their identification and suspect it was a marine species of *Bothriocephalus*.

We dispute the conclusion of Dubinina (1982) that *B. opsariichthydis* Yamaguti, 1934 and *B. acheilognathi* Yamaguti, 1934 are separate species. We are of the opinion that the scolex characters utilized by Dubinina in this instance represent no more than variation of form produced by different methods of fixation. Thus, as indicated earlier, the Yamaguti (1934) specimen of *B. acheilognathi* has a scolex form consistent with a worm fixed after relaxation but viewed from a semi-dorsoventral angle (as our Fig. 8). The Yamaguti (1934) specimen of *B. opsariichthydis* (as *B. opsalichthydis*) has a scolex corresponding with a worm fixed immediately on removal from the host intestine (as our Fig. 6). We agree with Dubinina (1982) that *Schyzocotyle fluviatilus* Akhmerov, 1960 (see Fig. 1a) is a species of *Bothriocephalus*, it having a scolex corresponding to our Figure 1, a worm fixed *in situ* in the host intestine.

We propose the continued use of the name B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934 in preference to that of B. opsariichthydis Yamaguti, 1934, as emended by Yeh (1955) and Yamaguti (1959). Although Yamaguti reserved the specific diagnosis of B. acheilognathi until additional specimens came to hand, he did describe a gravid individual, and there is no difficulty with the spelling of the specific epithet as exists for B. opsariichthydis. In addition the name B. acheilognathi has been accepted into common usage, and no rule of priority is contravened by its continued use. We agree with the other authorities noted earlier in this section that B. opsariichthydis Yamaguti, 1934, B. fluviatilis Yamaguti, 1952, B. gowkongensis Yeh, 1955, B. phoxini Molnár, 1968 and Schyzocotyle fluviatilis Akhmerov, 1960 are synonyms of B. acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934.

In conclusion, we consider our experiment with cestodes having highly mobile scolices without any hard structures has clearly shown the importance of adopting a standardized fixation procedure. We have also shown how if a standardized procedure is not used considerable taxonomic confusion can result. We agree with Dubinina (1982) that scolex characteristics play an important role in the identification of species of the genus *Bothriocephalus*, and also other cestodes, but only if the exact conditions of fixation are clearly stated.

Acknowledgements

We are grateful to the following for their help: Mr A.F. Brown, Department of Zoology, University of Liverpool (critical reading of manuscript), Mr K. Veltkamp, Department of Botany, University of Liverpool (scanning electron microscopy) and Mr. A.C. Wheeler, Department of Zoology, British Museum (Natural History), London (taxonomic advice, Japanese fishes). We thank the following authors (and journals/publishers) for permission to reproduce figures: the late A.Kh. Akhmerov (Helminthological Laboratory, Academy of Sciences, U.S.S.R.), M.N. Dubinina ('Nauka', Leningrad), W. Körting (Veterinary Medical Review), K. Molnár (Folia Parasitologica, Academia, Praha), K. Molnár and É. Murai (Parasitologia Hungarica, Akadémiai Kiadó, Budapest), V.A. Musselius (Trudy Vsesoyuznogo Nauchno-Issledovatel'skogo Instituta Prudnovogo Rybnogo Khozyaĭstva), E.N. Protasova ('Nauka', Moscow), L.S. Yeh (Acta Zoologica Sinica, The Zoological Society of China) and the Japanese Journal of Zoology (Science Council of Japan).

The Natural Environmental Research Council provided a studentship for Mr D.W. Pool without which the work could not have been completed.

References

- Akhmerov, A.K. (1960). [The tapeworms of fishes in the Amur river.] Trudi Gelmintologicheskoi Laboratorii. Akademiya Nauk SSR, 10, 15-31. [In Russian.]
- Andrews, C., Chubb, J.C., Coles, T. & Dearsley, A. (1981).
 The occurrence of *Bothriocephalus acheilognathi* Yamaguti, 1934 (*B. gowkongensis*) (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) in the British Isles. *Journal of Fish Diseases*, 4, 89–93.
- Baer, J.G. & Fain, A. (1958). Bothriocephalus (Clestobothrium) kivuensis n. sp., cestode parasite d'un barbeau du lac Kivu. Annales de la Société Royale Zoologique de Belgique, 88, 287-302.
- Borgarenko, L.F. (1981). [Helminths of birds in Tadzhikistan. Book 1 Cestodes.] Dushanbe, U.S.S.R., 'Donish' pp. 19–20 [In Russian.]
- Brandt, F. de W., Van As, J.G., Schoonbee, H.J. & Hamilton-Attwell, U.L. (1981). The occurrence and treatment of bothriocephalosis in the common carp. *Cyprinus carpio* in fish ponds with notes on its presence in the largemouth yellowfish *Barbus kimberleyensis* from the Vaal Dam, Transvaal. *Water* SA, 7, 35-42.
- Chubb, J.C. (1981). The Chinese tapeworm Bothriocephalus acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934 (synonym B. gowkongensis Yeh, 1955) in Britain. Proceedings of the 2nd British Freshwater Fisheries Conference, 40-51.
- Dubinina, M.N. (1971). [Cestodes of fish in the Amur basin.] Parazitologicheskii Sbornik, 25, 77–119 [In Russian].
- Dubinina, M.N. (1982). [On the synonymy of species of the genus *Bothriocephalus* (Cestoda, Bothriocephalidae), parasites of Cyprinidae of the USSR.] *Parazitologiya*, **16**, 41-45. [In Russian.]
- Gozmány, L. (1979). Septemlingual dictionary of the names of

European animals. I. 42 + 1171 pp. Akadémiai Kiado, Budapest.

- Körting, W. (1974). Bothriocephalosis of the carp. Veterinary Medical Review, No. 2, 165–171.
- Körting, W. (1975). Larval development of Bothriocephalus sp. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from carp (Cyprinus carpio L.) in Germany. Journal of Fish Biology, 7, 727–733.
- Liao, H.-L. & Shih, L.-C. (1956). Contribution to the biology and control of *Bothriocephalus gowkongensis* Yeh, a tapeworm parasite in the young grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idellus* C. and V.). Acta Hydrobiologica Sinica, 2, 129–185.
- von Linstow, O.F. (1889). Compendium der Helminthologie. Nachtrag. Die Litteratur der Jahre 1878–1889. xvi + 151 pp, Hanover.
- Mégnin, P. (1883). Notes sur les helminthes rapportés des côtes de la Laponie par M. le professeur Pouchet. Bulletin de la Société Zoologique de France, 8, 153-156.
- Molnár, K. (1968). Bothriocephalus phoxini sp. n. (Cestoda, Pseudophyllidea) from Phoxinus phoxinus L. Folia Parasitologica, Praha, 15, 83-86.
- Molnár, K. (1977). On the synonyms of Bothriocephalus acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934. Parasitologia Hungarica, 10, 61-62.
- Molnár, K. & Murai, É. (1973). Morphological studies on Bothriocephalus gowkongensis Ych, 1955 and B. phoxini Molnár, 1968 (Cestoda, Pseudophyllidea). Parasitologia Hungarica, 6, 99-108.
- Musselius, V.A. (1973). [The parasites of grass-eating fish, and their diseases, in the Far-Eastern complex of fish farms in the USSR.] Trudy Vsesoyuznogo Nauchno-Issledovatel'skogo Instituta Prudnovogo Rybnogo Khozyaĭstva (Parazity i bolezni tastitel' noyadnykh ryb dal'nevostochnogo kompleksa v prudovyleh khozyaïsivakh SSSR.) 22, 4-129. [In Russian.]
- Nakajima, K. & Egusa, S. (1974). [Bothriocephalus opsariichthydis Yamaguti (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) found in the gut of cultured carp, Cyprinus carpio (Linne) — I. Morphology and taxonomy.] Fish Pathology, 9, 31-40. [In Japanese.]
- Otte, E., Pfeiffer, H. & Supperer, R. (1972). Massenauftreten von Bothriocephalus acheilognathi in Teichkarpfen. Wiener Tierärztliche Monatsschrift, **59**, 174–175.
- Prigli, M. (1974). Új adatok a Bothriocephalus gowkongensis terjedeschez. Halászat, 20, 180.
- Prigli, M. (1975). Uber die Rolle der Wasservögel bei der Verbreitung des Bothriocephalus gowkongensis Yeh, 1955 (Cestoda). Parasitologia Hungarica, 8, 61–62.
- Protasova, E.N. (1977). [Principles of cestodology, edited by K.M. Ryzhikov. Volume VIII. Bothriocephalata – cestodes of fish.] Izdatel'stvo 'Nauka', 298 pp. [In Russian.]
- Rudolphi, C.A. (1810). Entozoorum sive vermium intestinalium historia naturalis, II. Pars. 2, xii + 386 pp. Amstelaedami.
- Ryšavý, B. & Moravec, F.(1975). Bothriocephalus aegyptiacus sp.n. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) from Barbus bynni, and its life cycle. Věstník Československé Společnosti Zoologické, 39, 68–72.
- Shinde, G.B. & Jadhav, B.V. (1977). Redescription of the

Bothriocephalus opsariichthydis Yamaguti (1934) from a marine fish in India. Marathwada University Journal of Science 16, 137–138.

- Wardle, R.A. & McLeod, J.A. (1952). The zoology of tapeworms. xxiv + 780 pp. The University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis.
- Yamaguti, S. (1934). Studies on the helminth fauna of Japan. Part 4. Cestodes of fishes. *Japanese Journal of Zoology*, 6, 1–112.
- Yamaguti, S. (1952). Studies on the helminth fauna of Japan. Part 49. Cestodes of fishes, II. Acta Medicinae Okayama, 8, 1–76.
- Yamaguti, S. (1959). Systema Helminthum. Volume II. The

4

cestodes of vertebrates. Interscience Publishers, Inc. New York and London, pp. 43-47.

- Yeh, L.S. (1955). On a new tapeworm Bothriocephalus gowkongensis n. sp. (Cestoda: Bothriocephalidae) from freshwater fish in China. Acta Zoologica Sinica, 7, 69–74.
- Zschokke, F. (1903). Die arktischen Cestoden. In: Romer, F. & Schudinn, F. Fauna Arctica. Eine Zusammenstellung der arktischen Tierformen, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung des Spitzbergen-Gebietes auf Grund der Ergebnisse der Deutschen Expedition in das Nördliche Eismeer im Jahre 1898. V. 3, 1 lief, 1-32. Jena.

Accepted for publication 26th March, 1984

Short Communication The Control of Bothriocephalus acheilognathi in Grass Carp, Ctenopharyngodon idella, using Praziquantel

D. Pool	K. Ryder	C. Andrews
Department of Zoology,	Humberside Fisheries,	Yorkshire Water Authority,
University of Liverpool.	Driffield	Leeds

The pathological effects of the tapeworm *Bothriocephalus acheilognathi* Yamaguti, 1934 on its cyprinid definitive hosts have been well documented. Heavy infestations may cause intestinal blockage, inflammation and perforation, generalized emaciation, reduced growth rate, and even death (Liao & Shih, 1956; Bauer, Musselius & Strelkov, 1969; Edwards & Hine, 1974; McDaniel, 1979; Scott & Grizzle, 1979; Hoffman, 1980). The prevalence of the infection may reach 100% in intensive and semi-intensive pond culture systems, where the parasite is a particular threat to underyearling cyprinids.

In order to select an anthelmintic which could be used to treat a batch of 30,000 newly imported grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella* Valenciennes), which were found to be infected with *B. acheilognathi*, trials were carried out in the laboratory using three anthelmintics: praziquantel (*Droncit*, Bayer), niclosamide (*Mansonil*, Bayer) and mebendazole (*Mebenvet*, Crown Chemicals).

Various dose rates of these anthelmintics were given to groups of ten fish from the infected batch in static water, 50-litre aquaria at $18-20^{\circ}$ C. The anthelmintics were suspended in 0.9% saline and administered as a single dose via stomach tube (after Andrews & Riley, 1982). The fish were approximately 15 cm long (and weighed 25-30 gm each), and the prevalence of the infestation with *B. acheilognathi* had previously been established as 50-80%.

At a dose rate of 150 mg kg^{-1} body weight, niclosamide did not achieve satisfactory control and there were signs of toxic effects on the fish. Mebendazole was used at dose rates of 35-500 mg kg⁻¹ b.w., but was ineffective in eliminating the parasite. In addition, at dose rates of 50 mg kg⁻¹ b.w. (and above) there were some signs of toxic effects on the fish.

At dose rates of $35-100 \text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ b.w. praziquantel was completely successful at eliminating the tapeworm infestation. There were no signs of toxic effects on the fish and the tapeworms usually disappeared from the gut of the fish within 7 days.

In view of these results (and the large number of fish to be treated), it was decided to use praziquantel and to administer the anthelmintic with pelleted food. The infected grass carp were divided into two batches, and the first batch of approximately 15,000 fish were brought into an indoor recirculating system consisting of eight 1600-litre fibreglass tanks and a large biological filter. The temperature was increased from 6 to 24°C at a rate of 2°C day⁻¹. The fish were then offered trout pellets (*Fingerling 1*, B.P. Nutrition) for several days, during which time any lethargic or moribund (and hence non-feeding) fish were removed and destroyed. As soon as the fish were feeding well, they were starved for 3 days and then offered anthelmintic-medicated feed which had been prepared as follows. Praziquantel powder was obtained

*Correspondence: Dr C. Andrews, Yorkshire Water Authority, Fisheries Science, 48 Skeidergate, York YO1 1HL.

32 Fish. Mgmt. (1984) 15, No. 1

from Bayer AG. Using a little cooking oil to bind the powder to the pellets, sufficient praziquantel was added to 3 days' ration to achieve a dose rate of (over the 3-day period) 125 mg kg⁻¹ b.w. To help ensure that all the fish had access to the medicated feed, automatic feeders were used to provide a 2-min feed every 30 min during daylight hours. Nine days after the end of the treatment period, 300 grass carp (i.e. sufficient to provide a 95% chance of detecting a 1% level of infection) were dissected and none found to harbour intestinal tapeworms.

The recirculating system was allowed to cool to ambient (winter) temperatures and this batch of fish was then released into a previously disinfected pond. The remaining infected fish were brought into the recirculating system and acclimated as described above. These fish were also fed on non-medicated pellets for several days and any obviously non-feeding fish removed and destroyed. The fish were then starved for three days and then fed (as before) on medicated pellets. On this occasion sufficient praziquantel was used to achieve (over the 3-day period) a dose rate of 105 mg kg⁻¹ b.w. Six days after the end of the treatment period, 300 grass carp were dissected and none found to contain *B. acheilognathi*. After allowing the recirculating system to cool these fish were released into the same pond as the first batch of treated fish, and the previously infected pond was drained, limed and left exposed to winter temperatures for several weeks (see Mitchell & Hoffman, 1980). During the time the fish were in the recirculating system, water quality was monitored and found to lie within the following limits: pH 7.1-7.8, total ammonia (as N) <0.3 mg 1⁻¹, nitrite (as N) 0.05-0.7 mg 1⁻¹, dissolved oxygen 70-100% saturation.

The acclimation of the fish to indoor tanks and to pelleted feed was considered very important, as was the removal of any obviously non-feeding fish before the medicated pellets were used. About 500 non-feeding fish were removed, which is less than 1.7% of the 30,000 fish which were imported.

The dose rates of praziquantel employed at this incident were far greater than those normally used to achieve tapeworm control. This was to allow for a certain amount of anthelmintic wastage (bearing in mind the method of administration), and to provide the best possible chance of complete tapeworm elimination. Further work is aimed at establishing the minimum effective-dose rate of praziquantel for treating *B. acheilognathi* and other helminth parasites of fish.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We gratefully acknowledge the assistance of Bayer AG, Bayer UK Ltd, Dr James Chubb (University of Liverpool) and Dr Roger Sweeting (Thames Water Authority). The comments in this paper do not necessarily reflect Regional Water Authority opinions.

REFERENCES

- Andrews, C. & Riley, A. (1982) Anthelmintic treatment of fish via stomach tube. Fisheries Management, 13, 83-84.
- Bauer, O.N., Musselius, V.A. & Strelkov, Yu. A. (1969) Diseases of Pond Fish. Israel Programme for Scientific Translations, Jerusalem (1973). Available from US Dept. Commerce, National Technical Information Service, Springfield, Va. 22151 USA, 219 pp.
- Edwards, D.J. & Hine, P.M. (1974) Introduction, preliminary handling, and diseases of grass carp in New Zealand. New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research, 8, 441-454.

Hoffman, G.L. (1980) Asian tapeworm, Bothriocephalus acheilognathi Yamaguti, 1934, in North America. Fisch und Umwelt, 8, 69-75.

Liao, H.-L. & Shih, L.-C. (1956) Contribution to the biology and control of Bothriocephalus

gowkongensis Yeh, a tapeworn parasite in the young grass carp (Ctenophargngodon idellus C and V). Acta Hydrobiologica Sinica, 2, 129–185 (in Chinese).

McDaniel, D. (1979) Procedures for the Detection and Identification of Certain Fish Pathogens. American Fisheries Society (Fish Health Section). Bethesda, Maryland, 118 pp.

Mitchell, A.J. & Hoffman, G.L. (1980) Important tapeworms of North American freshwater fishes. Fish Disease Leaflet 59. US Fish and Wildlife Service, United States Department of Interior. Washington D.C.

Scott, A.L. & Grizzle, J.M. (1979) Pathology of cyprinid fishes caused by Bothriocephalus gowkongensis Yea, 1955 (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea). Journal of Fish Diseases, 2, 69-73.